

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission.

Errors and omissions excepted.

+ Ford Motor Company 2019

All rights reserved.

Part Number: 201906 20191028132612

California Proposition 65

**WARNING:** Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle.

For more information go to [www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle](http://www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle).

**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm.

Wash your hands after handling.

Introduction About This Manual 7 Symbols Glossary ..7 Data Recording .9 Perchlorate .13 Ford Credit ..13 Replacement Parts Recommendation Special Notices ..14 Mobile Communications Equipment Export Unique Options ..15

Environment Protecting the Environment ..17

At a Glance Instrument Panel .18

Child Safety General Information .20 Installing Child Restraints ..22 Booster Seats .28 Child Restraint Positioning 30

Seatbelts Principle of Operation .32 Fastening the Seatbelts 33 Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime 35 Seatbelt Reminder 36 Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance ..38 Seatbelt Extensions .38

Personal Safety System Personal Safety System .39

Supplementary Restraints System Principle of Operation 40 Driver and Passenger Airbags .41 Front Passenger Sensing System ..42 Side Airbags .45 Driver and Passenger Knee Airbags .46 Safety Canopy - Coupe ..46 Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator 48 Airbag Disposal 49

Keys and Remote Controls General Information on Radio Frequencies 50 Remote Control 50  
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control

MyKey Principle of Operation 56 Creating a MyKey .57 Clearing All MyKeys ..57 Checking MyKey  
System Status ..58 Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems ..58 MyKey – Troubleshooting ..58

Doors and Locks Locking and Unlocking .60 Interior Luggage Compartment Release

Security Passive Anti-Theft System ..66 Anti-Theft Alarm .67

Steering Wheel Adjusting the Steering Wheel 68 Audio Control .68 Voice Control ..68

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Table of Contents

Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Cruise Control .69 Cruise Control - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise  
Control ..69 Information Display Control - Vehicles With: SYNC .69 Information Display Control -  
Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .69 Heated Steering Wheel .70 Horn ..70

Wipers and Washers Windshield Wipers ..71 Autowipers ..71 Windshield Washers .72

Lighting General Information .73 Lighting Control .73 Autolamps .74 Instrument Lighting Dimmer  
74 Headlamp Exit Delay ..74 Daytime Running Lamps .75 Front Fog Lamps ..75 Direction  
Indicators 76 Welcome Lighting ..76 Interior Lamps 76 Ambient Lighting .76

Automatic High Beam Control

What Is Automatic High Beam Control Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off .77  
Automatic High Beam Control Indicators Overriding Automatic High Beam Control

Windows and Mirrors Power Windows 79 Global Opening .79 Exterior Mirrors .80 Interior Mirror 81  
Sun Visors 81

Instrument Cluster Gauges ..83 Warning Lamps and Indicators 85 Audible Warnings and Indicators  
89

Information Displays General Information 90 Information Messages 100

Climate Control Manual Climate Control 111 Automatic Climate Control ..112 Hints on Controlling  
the Interior Climate Vehicles With: Manual Temperature Control .114 Hints on Controlling the  
Interior Climate Vehicles With: Automatic Temperature Control .115 Heated Rear Window .116  
Heated Exterior Mirrors .116 Remote Start ..116

Interior Air Quality What Is the Cabin Air Filter 117 Locating the Cabin Air Filter .117 Changing the  
Cabin Air Filter ..117

Seats Sitting in the Correct Position 118 Head Restraints ..118 Manual Seats 120 Power Seats .  
121 Memory Function 121



Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Table of Contents

Rear Seats 123 Climate Controlled Seats	.123
Garage Door Opener Universal Garage Door Opener	125
Auxiliary Power Points Auxiliary Power Points	.129
Storage Compartments Center Console 130 Glasses Holder	130
Starting and Stopping the Engine General Information 131 Keyless Starting 131 Steering Wheel Lock ..132 Starting a Gasoline Engine ..132 Engine Block Heater ..134	
Fuel and Refueling Safety Precautions ..136 Fuel Quality .136 Fuel Filler Funnel Location ..137 Running Out of Fuel 137 Refueling 139 Fuel Consumption .141	
Engine Emission Control Emission Law 143 Catalytic Converter .144	
Transmission Manual Transmission 147 Automatic Transmission ..148	
Rear Axle Limited Slip Differential .153	
Brakes General Information ..154 Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes Parking Brake 155 Hill Start Assist 155	
Traction Control Principle of Operation ..157 Using Traction Control .157	
Stability Control Principle of Operation ..158 Using Stability Control 159	
Parking Aids Principle of Operation 161 Rear Parking Aid ..161 Rear View Camera ..163	
Cruise Control What Is Cruise Control .167 Switching Cruise Control On and Off Setting the Cruise Control Speed .167 Canceling the Set Speed ..167 Resuming the Set Speed .168 Cruise Control Indicators ..168 Using Adaptive Cruise Control 168	
Driving Aids Driver Alert 174 Lane Keeping System 175 Blind Spot Information System ..179 Cross Traffic Alert ..181 Steering ..184 Pre-Collision Assist .185 Drive Control .189	

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Table of Contents

Load Carrying Load Limit .192	
Towing Towing a Trailer 197 Recommended Towing Weights ..198 Essential Towing Checks ..199 Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels ..200	
Convertible Top Opening the Convertible Top ..202 Closing the Convertible Top .203	
Driving Hints Reduced Engine Performance ..205 Economical Driving 205 Cold Weather Precautions .206 Breaking-In 206 Driving Through Water ..206 Floor Mats 207	



Roadside Emergencies Roadside Assistance ..208 Hazard Flashers 209 Fuel Shutoff .209 Jump Starting the Vehicle 210 Post-Crash Alert System 212 Transporting the Vehicle 213

Customer Assistance Getting the Services You Need 214 In California (U.S. Only) ..215 The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only) 216 Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only) 217 Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada 217 Ordering Additional Owner's Literature

Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only) Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only)

Fuses Fuse Specification Chart 221 Changing a Fuse ..230

Maintenance General Information ..232 Opening and Closing the Hood .232 Under Hood Overview - 2.3L EcoBoost Under Hood Overview - 5.0L 235 Under Hood Overview - 5.0L. Bullitt .236 Engine Oil Dipstick ..237 Engine Oil Check 237 Oil Change Indicator Reset 238 Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.3L EcoBoost/5.0L 239 Changing the Engine Air Filter - 5.0L.

Bullitt ..239 Engine Coolant Check 240 Manual Transmission Fluid Check .244 Automatic Transmission Fluid Check Brake Fluid Check 245 Clutch Fluid Check - Manual Transmission ..246 Power Steering Fluid Check .246 Changing the 12V Battery 246 Adjusting the Headlamps ..248 Washer Fluid Check ..250 Fuel Filter .250 Checking the Wiper Blades ..250 Changing the Wiper Blades ..250 Changing a Bulb .251

Track Use Track Use .252

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Table of Contents

Vehicle Care General Information .255 Cleaning Products ..255 Cleaning the Exterior 255 Waxing . 257 Cleaning the Engine ..257 Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades Cleaning the Interior .258 Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens .258 Cleaning Leather Seats .259 Repairing Minor Paint Damage .260 Cleaning the Wheels 260 Vehicle Storage .260 Cleaning the Convertible Top ..262 Body Styling Kits ..262

Wheels and Tires General Information .263 Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit .263 Tire Care 269 Using Summer Tires .284 Using Winter Tires ..284 Using Snow Chains 285 Tire Pressure Monitoring System 286 Changing a Road Wheel ..289 Driving at High Speed .294 Technical Specifications .. 295

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications - 2.3L EcoBoost Engine Specifications - 5.0L .297 Motorcraft Parts - 2.3L EcoBoost ..298 Motorcraft Parts - 5.0L .299 Motorcraft Parts - 5.0L. Bullitt ..300 Vehicle Identification Number .301 Vehicle Certification Label .302

Transmission Code Designation ..302 Capacities and Specifications - 2.3L EcoBoost .303 Capacities and Specifications - 5.0L 311 Bulb Specification Chart ..319



Network Connectivity Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network ..320 Network Connectivity – Troubleshooting

Wi-Fi Hotspot Creating a Wi-Fi Hotspot .323 Changing the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password 323

Audio System General Information .324 Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC ..324 Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 326 Digital Radio .328 Satellite Radio 330 USB Port 333 Media Hub ..333

SYNC General Information .334 Using Voice Recognition ..335 Using SYNC With Your Phone .. 337 SYNC Applications and Services 338 Using SYNC With Your Media Player SYNC Troubleshooting 342

SYNC 3 General Information ..351 Using Voice Recognition ..353 Entertainment 360 Climate ..370

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Table of Contents

Phone 372 Navigation 374 Apps ..379 Settings .382 SYNC 3 Troubleshooting ..384

Accessories Accessories 397

Ford Protect Ford Protect .398

Scheduled Maintenance General Maintenance Information 400 Normal Scheduled Maintenance 403 Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance .406 Scheduled Maintenance Record . 408

Appendices Electromagnetic Compatibility ..419 End User License Agreement 421 Declaration of Conformity ..447 Declaration of Conformity - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 ..447

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Table of Contents

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

Note: Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so they may appear different to you on your vehicle.

Note: Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.

E154903

Right-hand side.

Left-hand side.

## **SYMBOLS GLOSSARY**

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

E162384

Air conditioning system

E231157

Air conditioning system lubricant type

Anti-lock braking system

Avoid smoking, flames or sparks

Battery

Battery acid

Brake fluid - non petroleum based

Brake system

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Introduction

E249038

Back Button.

Arrow Up.

Voice Control Button.

Arrow Down.

Pony Button.

Audio Button.

Phone Buttons.

Settings Button.

Navigation Button.

Press one of the quick action menu (QAM) buttons to enter a menu. Toggle (B) and (D) to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu. Press the OK button to enter a sub-menu. Press (A) to exit a menu. Press the open menu's QAM button at any time to close the menu (escape button). Press the OK button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Settings

Settings

Trip/Fuel Info

Auto Engine Off Driver Assist Blindspot

Pre-Collision Assist

Cross Traffic Assist

Cruise Control

Driver Alert

Hill Start Assist

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Information Displays

Settings

Rear Park Aid

Lane Keeping System

Tire Monitor

Wipers

Speedometer km/h or Speedometer MPH

Vehicle Advanced Settings MyKey

Display Setup

Pony



WARNING: Track Apps is for track use only. Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It is always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage.

Track Apps provides a suite of options to record and optimize your track performances. See Track Use (page 252).

Pony

Show Status MyMode

MyMode must be configured and saved before selection enabled.

Add MyMode

Choose your applicable setting. Exhaust Mode Quiet Start

Acceleration Timer Track Apps

Brake Performance

Line Lock

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Information Displays

Pony

Lap Timer

Start Option

Shift Point Performance Shift Indicator Shift Tone

Shift Light Mode

Launch Control Launch Control RPM

Rev Match

Show Gauges Gauges

Configure MyGauges

Primary Color MyColor

Secondary Color

Ambient Light

Create MyColor

Change with Drive Mode Cluster Appearance Normal

Sport



## Track

1 See Track Use (page 252).

Note: Quiet Start allows you to schedule when the Exhaust Mode turns on the Quiet setting. The time window can be from 1 to 24 hours.

Note: Depending on your vehicle configuration, some features such as Exhaust Mode and Line Lock may be if equipped.

Note: The menu options for Performance Shift Indicator, Launch Control, and Rev Match are for manual transmissions only.

## Phone

See General Information (page 351).

## Audio

See General Information (page 351).

## Navigation (If Equipped)

See General Information (page 351).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Information Displays

# INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages display or are available. The information display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.

Press the OK button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display. See Information Display Control (page 69). The information display automatically removes other messages after a short time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

### Action Message

A radar malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise control from engaging. See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 168).

### Adaptive Cruise Malfunction

A condition exists such that the adaptive cruise cannot function properly. See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 168).

### Adaptive Cruise Not Available

You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather. ice. mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve. See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 168).

Adaptive Cruise Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual

The system has disabled the automatic braking.

Normal Cruise Active Automatic Braking Turned Off

A radar malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise control from engaging.

Front Sensor Not Aligned

The adaptive cruise has reinstated controls to the driver.

Adaptive Cruise - Driver Resume Control

Your vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise.

Adaptive Cruise Speed Too Low to Activate

The adaptive cruise is automatically adjusting the gap distance and the driver needs to shift the transmission into a lower gear.

Adaptive Cruise Shift Down

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Information Displays

Airbag

Action Message

The system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor.

Remove blockage.

Occupant Sensor BLOCKED Remove Objects Near Passenger Seat

Alarm

Action Message

Alarm triggered due to unauthorized entry. See Anti-Theft Alarm (page 67).

Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm. Start Vehicle.

All perimeter sensors are active. See Anti-Theft Alarm (page 67).

Alarm All Sensors Peri meter Sensing

Battery and Charging System

Action Message

The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

#### Check Charging System

The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

#### Charging System Service Soon

The charging system needs servicing. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

#### Charging System Service Now

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Information Displays

##### Action Message

The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered.

##### Battery State of Charge Low

The battery management system detects an extended low voltage condition. Your vehicle disables various features to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features operate again as normal.

##### Low Battery Features Temporarily Turned Off

The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn your ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.

##### Turn Power Off To Save Battery

#### Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System (If Equipped)

##### Action Message

A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

##### Blindspot System Fault

The system sensors are blocked. See Blind Spot Information System (page 179).

##### Blindspot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual

The blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See Blind Spot Information System (page 179).

Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual

A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Cross Traffic System Fault

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Information Displays

Doors and Locks

Action Message

The driver door is not completely closed.

Driver Door Ajar

The passenger door is not completely closed.

Passenger Door Ajar

The trunk is not completely closed.

Trunk Ajar

The hood is not completely closed.

Hood Ajar

The system has disabled the door switches.

Switches Inhibited Security Mode

Drive Control

Action Message

Indicates that one or more of the conditions required to change drive modes has a fault. If issues persist see your authorized dealer.

Drive Mode Not Available

Electronic Stability Control

Action Message

The system detects a malfunction due to a blocked sensor.

Service AdvanceTrac

The status of the system after you switch it off.

AdvanceTrac Off

The status of the system after you switch it on.

AdvanceTrac On

The system is in sport mode.

AdvanceTrac SPORT MODE

Engine

Action Message

The engine is overheating and the power has been reduced to assist in lowering the temperature. Stop in a safe place as soon as it is possible.

Power Reduced to Lower Engine Temp

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Information Displays

Exhaust Mode

Action Message

Indicates that the exhaust state selected, through the menu or drive mode selection, is for use on the track and may not comply with local noise regulations. Only on vehicles with active exhaust.

For Track Use See Manual

Fuel

Action Message

An early reminder of a low fuel condition.

Fuel Level Low

The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.

Check Fuel Fill Inlet

Hill Start Assist

Action Message

Hill start assist is not available. Contact an authorized dealer.

See Hill Start Assist (page 155).

Hill Start Assist Not Available

Keys and Intelligent Access

Action Message

A reminder to press the brake while starting the vehicle.

To START Press Brake

A reminder to depress the clutch pedal on manual transmission while starting the vehicle.

To START Press Clutch

The system does not detect a key in your vehicle. See Keyless Starting (page 131).

No Key Detected

You pressed the start/stop button to switch off the engine and your vehicle does not detect your intelligent access key inside your vehicle.

Restart Now or Key is Needed

Your vehicle is in the accessory ignition state.

Accessory Power is Active

There is a problem with your vehicle's starting system. See an authorized dealer for service.

Starting System Fault

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Information Displays

Action Message

You have successfully programmed an intelligent access key to the system.

Key Program Successful

You have failed to program an intelligent access key to the system.

Key Program Failure

You have programmed the maximum number of keys to the system.

Max Number of Keys Learned

You have not programmed enough keys to the system.

Not Enough Keys Learned

The key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible.

Key Battery Low Replace Soon

Inform the driver that they are exiting the vehicle and the engine is on.

Engine ON

Maintenance

Action Message

Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine. Check the oil level. If the warning stays on or continues to come on with your engine running, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

#### Low Engine Oil Pressure

The engine oil life remaining is 10% or less.

#### Change Engine Oil Soon

The oil life left is at 0%.

#### Oil Change Required

The brake fluid level is low. Inspected the brake system immediately. See Brake Fluid Check (page 245).

#### Brake Fluid Level Low

The brake system needs servicing. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.

#### Check Brake System

Indicates that your vehicle is still in Transport mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. Contact an authorized dealer.

#### Transport Mode Contact Dealer

Indicates that your vehicle is still in Factory mode. This may not allow some features to operate properly. Contact an authorized dealer.

#### Factory Mode Contact Dealer

The powertrain needs service due to a powertrain malfunction.

#### See Manual

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Information Displays

##### MyKey

##### Action Message

You cannot program a MyKey.

##### MyKey not Created

MyKey is active.

##### MyKey Active Drive Safely

When switching on your vehicle and MyKey is in use, displays that the MyKey speed limit is on.

Speed Limited to XX MPH/km/h

MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h).

Near Vehicle Top Speed

You have reached the speed limit set for your MyKey.

Vehicle at Top Speed of MyKey Setting

You have an active MyKey with a programmed set speed limit.

Check Speed Drive Safely

Belt-Minder turns on with a MyKey in use.

Buckle Up to Unmute Audio

With a MyKey in use. AdvanceTrac turns on.

AdvanceTrac On MyKey Setting

With a MyKey in use. traction control turns on.

Traction Control On MyKey Setting

With a MyKey in use. park aid is always on.

MyKey Park Aid Cannot be Deactivated

Park Aid

Action Message

The system has detected a condition that requires service.

Contact an authorized dealer. See Rear Parking Aid (page 161).

Check Rear Park Aid

Displays the park aid status.

Rear Park Aid On Off

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Information Displays

E270480

Brake system

Cabin air filter

Check fuel cap

Child safety door lock or unlock

Child seat lower anchor

Child seat tether anchor  
E71340  
Cruise control  
Do not open when hot  
Engine air filter  
Engine coolant  
Engine coolant temperature  
Engine oil  
Explosive gas  
Fan warning  
E71880  
Fasten seatbelt  
E231160  
Flammable  
E67017  
Front airbag  
Front fog lamps  
Fuel pump reset  
Fuse compartment  
Hazard flashers  
Heated rear window  
Windshield defrosting system  
Interior luggage compartment release  
Jack  
E161353  
Keep out of reach of children  
Lighting control  
Low tire pressure warning  
Maintain correct fluid level  
Note operating instructions



Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Introduction

### Park Brake

#### Action Message

You have set the parking brake and you have driven the vehicle more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after you have released the parking brake, contact an authorized dealer.

### Park Brake Engaged

### Pre-Collision Assist

#### Action Message

You have a blocked sensor due to inclement weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.

### Pre-Collision Assist Not Available Sensor Blocked

A fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

### Pre-Collision Assist Not Available

### Rear Axle

#### Action Message

This message appears when the oil temperature in the rear differential exceeds a safe limit. Reduce speed to allow the oil temperature to return to normal levels.

### Axle Over Temperature Reduce Speed

### Remote Start (If Equipped)

#### Action Message

A reminder to apply the brake and push the start button to drive your vehicle after a remote start.

#### To Drive: Press Brake and Start Button

A reminder to push the start button to drive your vehicle after a remote start.

#### To Drive: Press Start Button

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Information Displays

### Seats

#### Action Message

A reminder that memory seats are not available while driving.

### Memory Recall Not Permitted While Driving

Shows where you have saved your memory setting.

### Memory {0} Saved

### Starting System

#### Action Message

A reminder to apply the brake when starting your vehicle.

#### To START Press Brake

A reminder to apply the clutch when starting your vehicle.

#### To START Press Clutch

The starter has exceeded its cranking time in attempting to start your vehicle.

### Cranking Time Exceeded

The starter is attempting to start your vehicle.

### Engine Start Pending Please Wait

The system has cancelled the pending start.

### Pending Start Cancelled

### Steering System

#### Action Message

The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.

#### Steering Fault Service Now

The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.

#### Steering Loss Stop Safely

The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.

#### Steering Assist Fault Service Required

The steering lock system has detected a condition that requires service. See an authorized dealer.

#### Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now

You need to turn your steering wheel while start your vehicle to unlock your steering column.

Steering Column Lock Remove and re-insert key while turning wheel to unlock

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Information Displays

### Suspension System

#### Action Message

Displays if the adaptive damping system detects a condition that requires service. Your vehicle speed is limited to 80 mph (130 km/h). Have your vehicle serviced soon.

Suspension Fault Speed Limited to XX MPH/km/

### Tire Mobility Kit (If Equipped)

#### Action Message

This message appears when the tire sealing compound in the Temporary Mobility Kit expires and you need to replace it.

When you replace the sealing compound you can reset any warning messages through your settings menu. See General Information (page 90).

### Service Tire Mobility Kit

### Tire Pressure Monitoring System

#### Action Message

One or more tires on your vehicle has low tire pressure. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 286).

#### Tire Pressure Low

The tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 286).

#### Tire Pressure Monitor Fault

A tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning or your spare tire is in use. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 286). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

#### Tire Pressure Sensor Fault

### Traction Control

#### Action Message

The status of the system after you switched it off.

#### Traction Control Off

The status of the system after you switched it on.

Traction Control On

The system detects a spinout and turns on the hazard flashers.

Spinout Detected Hazards Activated

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Information Displays

Transmission

Action Message

Contact an authorized dealer.

Transmission Malfunction Service Now

Contact an authorized dealer.

Transmission Service Required

A reminder to shift into park.

Transmission Not in Park

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Information Displays

## **MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL**

E287201

Note: Depending on your vehicle option package, the controls may look different from what you see here.

Directing the Airflow

Press and release the button to direct airflow to the windshield air vents and de-mister.

Press and release the button to direct airflow to the instrument panel air vents.

Press and release the button to direct airflow to the footwell air vents.

You can direct air through the windshield and footwell air vents or the instrument panel and footwell air vents at the same time.

Setting the Blower Motor Speed

E265389

Turn the control to adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

Setting the Temperature

E244106

Turn the control to set the temperature.

Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off

Press and release the button.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Climate Control

Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Note: In certain conditions such as maximum defrost, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.

Switching the Climate Control On and Off

Press and release the button.

Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off

Turn the temperature control counterclockwise to the lowest setting.

Note: Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel air vents, air conditioning turns on and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off

Turn the temperature control clockwise to the highest setting.

Note: Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Switching Recirculated Air On and Off

Press and release the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior, when used with A/C, and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off, or prevent you from switching on, in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off in various air distribution control combinations during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

## **AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL**

E287205

Note: Depending on your vehicle option package, the controls may look different from what you see here.

Note: You can switch temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius.

Note: You can control some of the climate features through the touchscreen.

### Setting the Blower Motor Speed

Press and release + or - to adjust the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Climate Control

### Setting the Temperature

Press the toggle button on the left-hand side of the climate control upward or downward to set the left-hand temperature.

Note: This control also adjusts the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

Press the toggle button on the right-hand side of the climate control upward or downward to set the right-hand temperature.

### Switching Auto Mode On and Off

Press and release the button to switch on automatic operation, then set the temperature.

The system adjusts the blower motor speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air to reach and maintain the temperature you have set.

Note: You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding the button for more than two seconds.

### Switching the Air Conditioning On and Off

Press and release the button.

Use air conditioning with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency.

Note: In certain conditions, such as maximum defrost, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the air conditioning.

### Switching the Climate Control On and Off

Press and release the button.

### Switching Defrost On and Off

Press and release the button to distribute air through the windshield air vents and de-mister.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

### Switching Maximum Air Conditioning On and Off

Press and release the button for maximum cooling.

Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel air vents. air conditioning turns on and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

### Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off

Press and release the button for maximum defrosting.

Air flows through the windshield air vents. and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: To prevent window fogging. you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Climate Control

### Switching Recirculated Air On and Off

Press and release the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air.

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This may reduce the time needed to cool the interior. when used with A/C. and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off. or prevent you from switching on. in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off in various air distribution control combinations during hot weather to improve cooling efficiency.

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL TEMPERATURE CONTROL

### General Hints

Note: Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

Note: You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

Note: To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle. do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

Note: Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

Note: Remove any snow. ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

Note: To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather. drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

### Quickly Heating the Interior

Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest speed setting.

Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.

Direct air to the footwell air vents.

### Recommended Settings for Heating

Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.

Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.

Direct air to the footwell air vents.

### Quickly Cooling the Interior

Select MAX A/C.

Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

### Recommended Settings for Cooling

Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.

Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.

Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.

### Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods During Extreme High Ambient Temperatures

Apply the parking brake.

Place your vehicle in park (P) or neutral.

Select MAX A/C.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Climate Control

Adjust the blower motor speed to the lowest speed setting.

### Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

Direct air to the instrument panel and windshield air vents.

Press and release A/C.

Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer.

Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest setting.

Direct air toward the side windows.

Close the instrument panel air vents.

## HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE VEHICLES WITH: AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL

### General Hints

Note: Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

Note: You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

Note: To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle. do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

Note: Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

Note: Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

Note: To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

### Automatic Climate Control

Note: Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.

Note: The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.

Note: For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

Note: If you select AUTO during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.

Note: If you select AUTO during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

### Quickly Heating the Interior

Press and release AUTO.

Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

### Recommended Settings for Heating

Press and release AUTO.

Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

### Quickly Cooling the Interior

Press and release MAX A/C.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

Press and release AUTO.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Climate Control

Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point. then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.

Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 72°F (22°C) as a starting point. then adjust the setting as necessary.

HEATED REAR WINDOW

E184884

Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage to the heated rear window grid lines.

## HEATED EXTERIOR MIRRORS

(IF EQUIPPED)

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on.

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

REMOTE START (IF EQUIPPED)

You can switch this feature on or off and adjust the settings in the information display.

The system adjusts the interior temperature depending on your chosen settings during remote start.

You cannot adjust the climate control setting during remote start operation. The information display and the indicators do not turn on during remote start. When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the previous settings.

You can now make adjustments.

You need to switch on certain vehicle-dependent features, such as: Heated seats. Cooled seats. Heated steering wheel. Heated mirrors. Heated rear window.

#### Automatic Settings

In hot weather, the system sets to 72°F (22°C). The cooled seats are set to high, if available, and AUTO is on in the information display.

In moderate weather, the system either heats or cools, based on pre-selected settings. The rear defroster, heated mirrors and heated or cooled seats do not turn on.

In cold weather, the system sets to 72°F (22°C). The heated seats are set to high, if available, and AUTO is on in the information display. The heated rear window and heated mirrors turn on.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Climate Control

E270945

Horn control

Panic alarm

E139213

Parking aid

Parking brake

Power steering fluid

Power windows front/rear

Power window lockout

E231159

Requires registered technician

Safety alert

See Owner's Manual

E231158

See Service Manual

Service engine soon

E270849

Passenger airbag activated

E270850

Passenger airbag deactivated

Side airbag

E167012

Shield the eyes

E138639

Stability control

E163957

Hill descent control

E272858

Trail control

E270969

Windshield wiping system

Windshield wash and wipe

## **DATA RECORDING**

**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. but as technology rapidly changes. we recommend that you visit the regional Ford website for the latest information.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Introduction

## **WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER**

Your vehicle has a cabin air filter. which gives you and your passengers the following benefits: It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration. It improves the interior compartment cleanliness. It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

## LOCATING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter is behind the glovebox.

Note: The filter access door is above the passenger footwell under the instrument panel.

## CHANGING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

Replace the filter at regular intervals. See Scheduled Maintenance (page 400).

Note: Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.

Note: Using an aftermarket cabin air filter could reduce cabin air filtration and climate control performance.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Interior Air Quality

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

**WARNING:** Do not recline the seatback too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a collision.

**WARNING:** Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest.

Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines: Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible. Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30° from the upright position. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible.

Make sure that you remain comfortable. Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover. Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent. Bend your legs slightly so that you can

press the pedals fully. Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## HEAD RESTRAINTS

**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you operate your vehicle.

This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Seats

**WARNING:** The adjustable head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

**WARNING:** Install the head restraint properly to help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

**Note:** Adjust the seatback to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.

Front seat head restraints (if equipped)

E138642

The head restraints consist of:

An energy absorbing head restraint.

Two steel stems.

Guide sleeve adjust and release button.

Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

Adjusting the Head Restraint

Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

Lowering the Head Restraint

Press and hold button C.

Push the head restraint down.

Removing the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.

Press and hold buttons C and D.

Pull the head restraint up.

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until in locks.

Front Seat Non-Adjustable Head Restraints (If Equipped)

E174407

The non-adjustable head restraints consist of a trimmed foam covering over the upper structure of the seatback.

Properly adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position, so that the head restraint is positioned as close as possible to the back of your head.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Seats

Tilting Head Restraints (If Equipped)

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:

E144727

Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.

Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again will then release it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

## MANUAL SEATS

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver's seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving.

**WARNING:** Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.

**WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.

The manual front seats may consist of:

E174553

A bar to move the seat backward and forward.

A lever to adjust the height of the seat.

A lever to adjust the angle of the seatback.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Seats

## **POWER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)**

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat when your vehicle is moving.

**WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

Driver Side

E187770

Passenger Side

E285698

The power seat control is on the outermost side of the seat. Move the control in the direction of the arrows to raise or lower the seat cushion or to move the seat forward, backward, up or down.

Power Lumbar (If Equipped)

The power lumbar control is on the side of the driver seat.

E187771

Press one side of the control to increase lower back firmness. Press the other side of the control to decrease lower back firmness.

## **MEMORY FUNCTION (IF EQUIPPED)**

**WARNING:** Before activating the memory seat, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.

**WARNING:** Do not use the memory function when your vehicle is moving.

This feature automatically recalls the position of the following.

Driver seat. MyColor settings. Power mirrors.

The memory control is on the driver door.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Seats

E142554

### Saving a PreSet Position

Switch the ignition on.

Adjust the memory features to your desired position.

Press and hold the desired preset button until you hear a single tone.

You can save up to three preset memory positions. You can save a memory preset at any time.

### Recalling a PreSet Position

Press and release the preset button associated with your desired driving position. The memory features move to the position stored for that preset.

Note: You can only recall a preset memory position when the ignition is off, or when the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N) if the ignition is on.

You can also recall a preset memory position by: Pressing the unlock button on your intelligent access key fob if it is linked to a preset position. Unlocking the intelligent driver door handle if a linked key fob is present.

Note: When the ignition is off and you use a linked key fob to recall your memory position, the seat moves to the Easy Entry position.

Note: Pressing any active memory feature adjustment control (or any memory button) during a memory recall cancels the operation.

Seat recall movement also stops if you drive your vehicle.

### Linking a PreSet Position to your Remote Control or Intelligent Access Key Fob

You can save preset memory positions for up to three remote controls or intelligent access (IA) keys.

With the ignition on, move the memory positions to the desired positions.

Press and hold the desired preset button for about five seconds. A tone sounds after about two seconds.

Continue holding until you hear a second tone.

Within three seconds, press the lock button on the remote control you are linking.

To unlink a remote control, follow the same procedure – except in step 3, press the unlock button on the remote control.

Note: If more than one linked remote control or intelligent access key is in range, the memory function moves to the settings of the first key to initiate a memory recall.

### Easy Entry and Exit Feature

If you enable the easy entry and exit feature, it automatically moves the driver seat position rearward up to 2 in (5 cm) when you switch the ignition off.

The driver seat returns to the previous position when you switch the ignition on.

You can enable or disable this feature through the information display. See Information Displays (page 90).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Seats

## REAR SEATS

**WARNING:** When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

**WARNING:** Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Accessing the Rear Seats

E207088

Use the seatback release to fold the back of the front seat forward for rear seat access. The release handle is on the upper back of the front seat. The seatback has memory and locks automatically in the original position.

Second Row Split-Folding Rear Seat (If Equipped)

E175611

To lower the seatback(s):

Pull the strap to release the seatback.

Fold the seatback down.

Returning the Seatbacks to the Upright Position

When raising the seatback(s), push the top of the seatback rearward and make sure you hear the seat latch into place. Pull down on the seatback to make sure that it has locked into position.

## CLIMATE CONTROLLED SEATS

(IF EQUIPPED)

Heated Seats

**WARNING:** People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical

conditions. must use caution when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures. especially if used for long periods of time.

Do not place anything on the seat that may block the heat. such as a blanket or

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Seats

Note: Do not do the following:

Place heavy objects on the seat. Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly. Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running.

Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.

E146322

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off.

More indicator lights indicate warmer settings.

## Cooled Seats

The cooled seats only function when the engine is running.

E146309

Press the cooled seat symbol to cycle through the various cool settings and off.

More indicator lights indicate cooler settings.

If the engine falls below 350 RPM while the cooled seats are on. the feature turns itself off. You will need to reactivate it.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Seats

# UNIVERSAL GARAGE DOOR OPENER

## HomeLink Wireless Control System

**WARNING:** Do not use the system with any garage door opener that does not have the safety stop and reverse feature as required by U.S. Federal Safety Standards (this includes any garage door opener manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door opener which cannot detect an object. signaling the door to stop and reverse. does not meet current federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases the risk of serious injury or death.

Note: Make sure that the garage door and security device are free from obstruction when you are programming. Do not program the system with the vehicle in the garage.

Note: Make sure you keep the original remote control transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future system programming.

Note: We recommend that upon the sale or lease termination of your vehicle, you erase the programmed function buttons for security reasons. See Erasing the Function Button Codes later in this section.

Note: You can program a maximum of three devices. To change or replace any of the three devices after it has been initially programmed, you must first erase the current settings. See Erasing the Function Button Codes.

#### E188211

The universal garage door opener replaces the common hand-held garage door opener with a three-button transmitter integrated into the driver's sun visor.

The system includes two primary features, a garage door opener and a platform for remote activation of devices within the home. You can program garage doors as well as entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks and home or office lighting.

Additional system information can be found online at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com), [www.youtube.com/user/HomeLinkGentex](http://www.youtube.com/user/HomeLinkGentex) or by calling the toll-free help line at 1-800-355-3515.

#### In-Vehicle Programming

This process is to program your in-vehicle HomeLink function button with your hand-held transmitter.

Note: The programming steps below assume you will be programming HomeLink that was not previously programmed. If your HomeLink was previously programmed, you may need to erase your HomeLink buttons.

See Erasing the Function Button Codes.

Note: Put a new battery in the hand-held transmitter. This allows for quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Garage Door Opener (If Equipped)

#### E188212

With your vehicle parked outside of the garage, switch your ignition to the on position, but do not start your vehicle.

Press and release the function button that you would like to program.

Hold your hand-held garage door transmitter 1–3 in (2–8 cm) away from the HomeLink button you want to program.

Press and hold the hand-held transmitter button you want to program while watching the indicator light on HomeLink. Continue to hold the hand-held button until the HomeLink indicator light flashes rapidly or is continuously on.

Note: You may need to use a different method if you live in Canada or have difficulties programming your gate operator or garage door opener. See Gate Operator / Canadian Programming.

Press and hold the HomeLink button you programmed for two seconds. then release. You may need to do this twice to activate the door. If your garage door does not operate. watch the HomeLink indicator light.

If the indicator light stays on. the programming is complete. Your device should activate when the HomeLink button is pressed and released.

If the indicator light flashes rapidly. press and hold for two seconds and release the programmed HomeLink button. Repeat the "press/hold/release" sequence up to three times to complete the programming process. If your device still does not operate. you must program your garage door. See Programming Your Garage Door Opener Motor.

To program additional buttons. repeat Steps 1 – 4.

For questions or comments. please contact HomeLink at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com). [www.youtube.com/user/HomeLinkGentex](http://www.youtube.com/user/HomeLinkGentex) or by calling the toll-free help line at 1-800-355-3515.

#### Programming Your Garage Door Opener Motor

Note: You may need a ladder to reach the unit and you may need to remove the cover or lamp lens on your garage door opener.

E142659

Press the learn button on the garage door opener motor and then you have 30 seconds to complete the next two steps.

Return to your vehicle.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Garage Door Opener (If Equipped)

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle. vehicle maintenance requirements. events and malfunctions.

The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: Error logs are reset following a service or repair.

Note: We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.

Data recorded includes, for example: Operating states of system components, for example, fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level. Vehicle and component status, for example, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status. Events or errors in essential systems, for example, headlamps and brakes. System responses to driving situations, for example, airbag deployment and stability control. Environmental conditions, for example, temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example, an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

#### Service Data

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle.

This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada in Canada), and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle.

Additionally, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada, in Canada) may, where permitted by law, use vehicle diagnostic information for vehicle improvement or with other information we may have about you, for example, your contact information, to offer you products or services that may interest you. Data may be provided to our service providers such as part suppliers that may help diagnose malfunctions, and who are similarly obligated to protect data.

We retain this data only as long as necessary to perform these functions or to comply with law. We may provide information where required in response to official requests to law enforcement or other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority or court order, and such information may be used in legal proceedings. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use connected apps and services, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used to provide services to you, personalizing your experience, troubleshoot, and to improve products and services and offer you products and services that may interest

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Introduction

E188212

Press and hold the function button you want to program for 2 seconds. then release. Repeat this step. Depending on your brand of garage door opener. you may need to repeat this sequence a third time.

#### Gate Operator / Canadian Programming

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to “time-out” (or quit) after several seconds of transmission – which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal during programming. Similar to this Canadian law. some U.S. gate operators are designed to “time-out” in the same manner.

Note: If programming a garage door opener or gate operator. it is advised to unplug the device during the “cycling” process to prevent possible overheating.

Press and release. very two seconds. your hand-held transmitter until the HomeLink indicator light changes to a rapidly blinking or continuously on light.

Release the hand-held transmitter button.

Continue programing HomeLink. See In-Vehicle Programming. Step 4.

#### Erasing the Function Button Codes

Note: You cannot erase individual buttons.

#### E188213

Press and hold the outer two function buttons simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the indicator light above the buttons flashes rapidly.

When the indicator light flashes. release the buttons. You erased the codes for all buttons.

#### Reprogramming a Single Button

To program a device to a previously trained button. follow these steps:

Press and hold the desired button. Do NOT release the button.

The indicator light begins to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the button. follow Step 1 in the Programming section.

For questions or comments. contact HomeLink at [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com). [www.youtube.com/user/HomeLinkGentex](http://www.youtube.com/user/HomeLinkGentex) or by calling the toll-free help line at 1-800-355-3515.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Garage Door Opener (If Equipped)

#### FCC and RSS-210 Industry Canada Compliance

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful

interference. and (2) this device must accept any interference received. including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. End Users must follow the specific operating instructions for satisfying RF exposure compliance. This transmitter must be at least 8 in (20 cm) from the user and must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

The term "IC:" before the certification/registration number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Garage Door Opener (If Equipped)

12 Volt DC Power Point

**WARNING:** Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: When you switch the ignition on. you can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 amps.

If the power supply does not work after you switch the ignition off. switch the ignition on.

Note: Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug.

Note: Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watts or a fuse may blow.

Note: Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This damages the power point and may blow the fuse.

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge: Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is not running. Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

Locations

Power points may be in the following locations: On the front of the center console. Inside the center console.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Auxiliary Power Points

## **CENTER CONSOLE**

Stow items in the cup holder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

The console includes: Cup holder. Storage compartment.

E209039

Lift the latch to open the storage compartment to access the following features: Auxiliary power point. USB port.

E175706

Locking Storage Bin

Note: You cannot lock the storage bin when the vehicle is on.

The storage bin locks when you electronically lock the doors. The bin unlocks when you use the remote control to unlock the driver door.

## **GLASSES HOLDER**

E188216

Press near the center of the door to open it. Pull out the tray.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Storage Compartments

## **GENERAL INFORMATION**

**WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic.

Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 mi (8 km) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

## **KEYLESS STARTING**

Note: The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cellular phones.

Note: A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

### Ignition Modes

E248637

The keyless starting system has three modes:

**Off:** Turns the ignition off.

Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once when the ignition is in the on mode, or when the engine is running but the vehicle is not moving.

**On:** All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.

**Start:** Starts the engine.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Starting and Stopping the Engine

Press the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission), and then press the button for any length of time. An indicator light on the button illuminates when the ignition is on and when the engine starts.

### STEERING WHEEL LOCK (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock that automatically operates.

The steering wheel will lock shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it or when you lock your vehicle.

Note: The steering wheel will not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.

#### Unlocking the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

## STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: You can crank the engine for a total of 60 seconds (without the engine starting) before the starting system temporarily disables. The 60 seconds does not have to be all at once. For example, if you crank the engine three times for 20 seconds each time, without the engine starting, you reached the 60-second time limit. A message appears in the information display alerting you that you exceeded the cranking time. You cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, you are limited to a 15-second engine cranking time. You need to wait 60 minutes before you can crank the engine for 60 seconds again.

Before starting the engine, check the following: Make sure all occupants have fastened their seatbelts. Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off. Make sure the parking brake is on. Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission)

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

Note: You must have your intelligent access key in the vehicle in order to shift the transmission out of position P.

Fully press the brake pedal.

Press the button.

The system does not function if: The key frequencies are jammed. The key battery has no charge.

If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Starting and Stopping the Engine

E174956

Remove the rubber covering (A) in the cupholder.

Place the remote in the backup slot (B) with the buttons facing up and the keyring toward the front of the vehicle.

With the key in this position, press the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission), then the START button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

#### Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart the engine within 20 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid key is not present.

Within 20 seconds of switching the engine off, press the brake pedal (automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and press the button. After 20 seconds have expired, you can no longer restart the engine without the key present inside your vehicle.

Once the engine has started, it remains running until you press the button, even if the system does not detect a valid key. If you open and close a door while the engine is running, the system searches for a valid key. You cannot restart the engine if the system does not detect a valid key within 20 seconds.

#### Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure:

If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission, fully press the brake pedal. If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal and apply the handbrake.

Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).

Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.

Start the engine.

#### Automatic Engine Shutdown

Your vehicle is equipped with a feature that automatically shuts down the engine if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

#### Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine shutdown feature.

When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.

You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Starting and Stopping the Engine

You can reset the timer by interacting with your vehicle (such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal). You can temporarily switch off the shutdown feature any time the ignition is on (for the current ignition cycle only). Use the information display to do so. See Information Displays (page 90). During the countdown before engine shutdown, you are prompted to press OK or RESET (depending on your type of information display) to temporarily switch the feature off (for the current ignition cycle only).

### Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).

Press the button once.

Apply the parking brake.

Note: This switches off the ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators.

Note: If the engine is idling for 30 minutes, the ignition and engine automatically shut down.

### Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

Move the transmission selector lever to the neutral position and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.

When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).

Press and hold the button for one second, or press it three times within two seconds.

Apply the parking brake.

### Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

**WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

## Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

Open the windows at least 1 in (2.5 cm). Set your climate control to outside air.

## **ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF**

**EQUIPPED)**

**WARNING:** Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Starting and Stopping the Engine

**WARNING:** Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

**WARNING:** Do not fully close the hood, or allow it to drop under its own weight when using the engine block heater. This could damage the power cable and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, injury and property damage.

**Note:** The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C).

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element, installed in the engine block and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 120-volt AC electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation: Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard. Use as short an extension cord as possible. Do not use multiple extension cords.

Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire. If the block heater cord is under the hood, Do Not remove the wiring from its original location. Do Not close the hood on the extension wiring. Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles. Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected. Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes. Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use. Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

## Using the Engine Block Heater

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation.

Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

# SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

**WARNING:** Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Follow these guidelines when refueling: Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle. Always switch the engine off before refueling. Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent.

The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.

Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury. Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury. Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact

causes skin irritation. Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism.

Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction. serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

## FUEL QUALITY

### Choosing the Right Fuel

E161513

Your vehicle is designed to operate on regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Fuel and Refueling

#### Event Data

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as: How various systems in your vehicle were operating; Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/ fastened; How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and How fast the vehicle was traveling; and Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g. name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

### Comfort, Convenience and Entertainment Data

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe. See Settings (page 382).

#### Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example: Seat and steering wheel position. Climate control settings. Radio presets.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Introduction

Some fuel stations, particularly those in high altitude areas, offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87. The use of these fuels could result in engine damage that will not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

For best overall vehicle and engine performance, premium fuel with an octane rating of 91 or higher is recommended. The performance gained by using premium fuel is most noticeable in hot weather as well as other conditions, for example when towing a trailer. See Towing (page 197).

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

We recommend Top Tier detergent gasolines, where available to help minimize engine deposits and maintain optimal vehicle and engine performance. For additional information, refer to [www.toptiergas.com](http://www.toptiergas.com).

Note: Use of any fuel for which the vehicle was not designed can impair the emission control system, cause loss of vehicle performance, and cause damage to the engine which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not use: Diesel fuel. Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin. Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol or E85 fuel. Fuels containing methanol. Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.

Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). Leaded fuel, using leaded fuel is prohibited by law.

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

## FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is under the luggage compartment floor covering.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel: Add a minimum of 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine. You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: If your vehicle is on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.

### Filling a Portable Fuel Container

**WARNING:** Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Fuel and Refueling

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container: Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it. Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area). Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it. Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

### Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

**WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

**WARNING:** Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

**WARNING:** Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See Fuel Filler Funnel Location (page 137).

Note: Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

Fully open the fuel filler door.

Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.

E157452

Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.

Remove the fuel filler funnel.

Fully close the fuel filler door.

Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Note: Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Fuel and Refueling

## **REFUELING**

Refueling System Overview

E267248

Fuel filler door.

Fuel tank filler valve.

Fuel tank filler pipe.

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.

E206911

Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

Refueling Your Vehicle

**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Fuel and Refueling

WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

Fully open the fuel filler door.

Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.

E139202

Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.

E139203

Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Fuel and Refueling

E206912

Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.

E119081

When you finish refueling slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.

Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel.

Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Refueling System Warning (If Equipped)

If the fuel tank filler valve does not fully close, a message could appear in the information display.

## Message

### Check Fuel Fill Inlet

If the message appears, do the following:

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.

Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).

Apply the parking brake.

Fully open the fuel filler door.

Check the fuel tank filler valve for any debris that may be restricting its movement.

Remove any debris from the fuel tank filler valve.

Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler pipe. See Fuel Filler Funnel Location (page 137). This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel tank filler valve from fully closing.

Remove the fuel pump nozzle or fuel filler funnel from the fuel filler pipe.

Fully close the fuel filler door.

Note: The message may not immediately reset. If the message continues to appear and a warning lamp illuminates, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

### Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

See Capacities and Specifications (page 303).

In addition, the fuel tank contains an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Note: The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Fuel and Refueling

#### Filling the Fuel Tank

For consistent results when refueling: Switch the ignition off before fueling. An inaccurate reading results if you leave the engine running. Use the same fill rate, low-medium-high, each time you fill the tank. Allow no more than one automatic shut-off when refueling.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

### Calculating Fuel Economy

Your vehicle calculates fuel economy figures through the trip computer average fuel function. See Information Displays (page 90).

The first 1.00 mi (1.00 km) of driving is the break-in period of the engine. The system obtains a more accurate measurement after 2.00–3.00 mi (3.00–4.00 km).

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving, for example city or highway. This provides an accurate estimate of your vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Keeping records during summer and winter shows how temperature impacts fuel economy.

### Conditions Affecting Fuel Efficiency

Carrying unnecessary weight in your vehicle may reduce fuel economy. Avoid adding accessories that increase aerodynamic drag to your vehicle such as bug deflectors, car top carriers and ski or bike racks. Remove empty roof racks and keep windows shut at high speeds to reduce wind resistance and fuel use.

Check and adjust tire pressure regularly. Underinflated tires increases fuel consumption. Sudden acceleration and braking degrade fuel efficiency. Drive smoothly looking as far ahead as possible and avoid short trips when possible. Fuel efficiency degrades with lower temperatures. Comfort features use additional energy and consume more fuel. Use AC and other comfort features only when necessary. Using fuel blended with alcohol may increase fuel consumption.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Fuel and Refueling

## **EMISSION LAW**

**WARNING:** Do not remove or alter the original equipment floor covering or insulation between it and the metal floor of the vehicle. The floor covering and insulation protect occupants of the vehicle from the engine and exhaust system heat and noise. On vehicles with no original equipment floor covering insulation, do not carry passengers in a manner that permits prolonged skin contact with the metal floor. Failure to follow these instructions may result in fire or personal injury.

U.S. federal laws and certain state laws prohibit removing or rendering inoperative emission control system components.

Similar federal or provincial laws may apply in Canada. We do not approve of any vehicle modification without first determining applicable laws.

Tampering with emissions control systems including related sensors or the Diesel Exhaust Fluid system can result in reduced engine power and the illumination of the service engine soon light.

## Tampering With a Noise Control System

Federal laws prohibit the following acts: Removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance. Repair or replacement of any device or element of the design incorporated into a new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use. The use of the vehicle after any person removes or renders inoperative any device or element of the design.

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may presume to constitute tampering as follows: Removal of hood blanket. fender apron absorbers. fender apron barriers. underbody noise shields or acoustically absorptive material. Tampering or rendering inoperative the engine speed governor. to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer specifications.

If the engine does not start. runs rough. experiences a decrease in engine performance. experiences excess fuel consumption or produces excessive exhaust smoke. check for the following: A plugged or disconnected air inlet system hose. A plugged engine air filter element. Water in the fuel filter and water separator. A clogged fuel filter. Contaminated fuel. Air in the fuel system. due to loose connections. An open or pinched sensor hose. Incorrect engine oil level.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Engine Emission Control

Incorrect fuel for climatic conditions. Incorrect engine oil viscosity for climactic conditions.

Note: Some vehicles have a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank.

Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

Note: If these checks do not help you correct the concern. have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Noise Emissions Warranty.

## Prohibited Tampering Acts and Maintenance

On January 1, 1978. Federal regulation became effective governing the noise emission on trucks over 10,000 lb (4,363 kg) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The preceding statements concerning prohibited tampering acts and maintenance. and the noise warranty found in the Warranty Guide. are applicable to complete chassis cabs over 10,000 lb (4,363 kg) GVWR.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER

**WARNING:** Do not park. idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system. creating the risk of fire.

**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter.

The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.

**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a catalytic converter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly: Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time. Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected. Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See Jump Starting the Vehicle (page 210). Use only the specified fuel listed. Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving. Avoid running out of fuel. Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

Note: Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in scheduled maintenance information are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If you use anything other than Ford.

Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Engine Emission Control

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your warranty information for complete details.

### On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle has a computer known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) that monitors the engine's emission control system. The system protects the environment by making sure that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists a service technician in properly servicing your vehicle.

When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

Your vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.

Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.

The fuel fill inlet may not have closed properly. See Refueling (page 139).

Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

You can correct these temporary malfunctions by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time you start the engine. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city and highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness and lead to more costly repairs.

### Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state and provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.

If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, your vehicle may need service. See On-Board Diagnostics.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Engine Emission Control

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that your vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system checks the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days.

If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, you can perform the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving:

15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway or highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.

Allow your vehicle to sit for at least eight hours with the ignition off. Then, start the vehicle and complete the above driving cycle. The vehicle must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the vehicle until the above driving cycle is complete.

If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, you need to repeat the above driving cycle.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Engine Emission Control

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example: Music, videos or album art, Contacts and corresponding address book entries, Navigation destinations.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example, account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Vehicles With a Modem (If Equipped)

The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example, diagnostic information. These messages

could include information that identifies your vehicle. the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network

Note: The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings.

Note: The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons. for example. environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.

Note: To find out if your vehicle has a modem. visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).

## Vehicles With SYNC

### Mobile Device Data

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle. you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example. music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See Apps (page 379).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes the vehicle identification number of your vehicle. the SYNC module serial number. odometer. enabled apps. usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service. to troubleshoot. for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Introduction

# MANUAL TRANSMISSION

## Using the Clutch

Note: Failure to fully press the clutch pedal to the floor may cause increased shift efforts. prematurely wear transmission components or damage the transmission.

Note: Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to hold your vehicle at a standstill while waiting on a hill. These actions will reduce the life of the clutch and could nullify a clutch warranty claim.

Note: The engine may not start unless the intelligent access key is inside your vehicle.

E144954

Manual transmission vehicles have a starter interlock that prevents cranking the engine unless the clutch pedal is fully pressed.

To start the vehicle:

Make sure the parking brake is fully set.

Press the clutch pedal to the floor. then put the gearshift lever in the neutral position.

Start the engine.

Press the brake pedal and move the gearshift lever to the desired gear; first (1) or reverse (R).

Release the parking brake. then slowly release the clutch pedal while slowly pressing on the accelerator.

During each shift. the clutch pedal must be fully pressed to the floor. Make sure the floor mat is properly positioned so it doesn't interfere with the full extension of the clutch pedal.

### Recommended Shift Speeds

Note: Do not downshift into first (1) when your vehicle is moving faster than 15 mph (24 km/h). This will damage the clutch.

#### 2.3L

Upshifts When Accelerating - Recommended for Best Fuel Economy

Shift from:

15 mph (24 km/h) 1 - 2

24 mph (39 km/h) 2 - 3

35 mph (56 km/h) 3 - 4

41 mph (66 km/h) 4 - 5

50 mph (80 km/h) 5 - 6

#### 5.0L

Upshifts When Accelerating - Recommended for Best Fuel Economy

Shift from:

14 mph (23 km/h) 1 - 2

25 mph (40 km/h) 2 - 3

35 mph (56 km/h) 3 - 4

41 mph (66 km/h) 4 - 5

48 mph (77 km/h) 5 - 6

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Transmission

Reverse



Note: Make sure that your vehicle is at a complete stop before you shift into reverse (R). Failure to do so may damage the transmission.

Press the clutch pedal to the floor to disengage clutch.

Shift into reverse (R) by raising the collar below the gearshift knob up, then moving the lever fully to the left, then forward.

E99067

Note: The gearshift lever can only be moved to reverse (R) by raising the collar below the gearshift knob up before shifting to reverse. This is a lockout feature which protects the transmission from accidentally engaging reverse (R) when intending to select first (1).

If reverse (R) is not fully engaged, press the clutch pedal down and return the gearshift to the neutral position. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, then raise the collar and shift to reverse (R) again.

### Parking Your Vehicle

**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to first gear. Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

To park your vehicle:

Apply the brake and shift into the neutral position.

Fully apply the parking brake, hold the clutch pedal down, then shift into first (1).

Turn the ignition off.

## **AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION**

(IF EQUIPPED)

**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Note: You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the intelligent access key is inside your vehicle.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Transmission

#### Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission

Putting your vehicle in gear:

Fully press down on the brake pedal.

Press and hold the button on the top of the gearshift lever.

Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.

Release the button and your transmission remains in the selected gear.

E174572

### Transmission Selector Positions

The instrument cluster displays the current gear.

#### Park (P)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from turning.

Come to a complete stop before putting your vehicle into and out of park (P).

#### Reverse (R)

With the selector in reverse (R), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

#### Neutral (N)

With the selector in neutral (N), you can start your vehicle and it is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down when in this position.

#### Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through all gears.

#### Sport (S)

Putting your vehicle in sport (S): Provides additional engine braking and extends lower gear operation to enhance performance for uphill climbs, hilly terrain or mountainous areas. This increases engine RPM during engine braking. Provides additional lower gear operation through the automatic transmission shift strategy. Provides gear upshifts and downshifts more quickly at higher engine speeds.

### SelectShift Automatic Transmission

This feature gives you the ability to change gears up or down as desired.

As long as the engine speed does not exceed the maximum allowable limit, downshifts are allowed. SelectShift automatically downshifts at low engine speeds in order to prevent engine stalls.

Note: Engine damage may occur if you maintain excessive engine revving without shifting.

In drive (D) SelectShift automatically upshifts at the optimal max engine speed, regardless of accelerator pedal travel.

In sport (S) mode SelectShift does not automatically upshift. even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Transmission

Brake-Shift Interlock

WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the stoplamps are working.

WARNING: When doing this procedure. you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement. always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.

WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released. but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated. the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible if this procedure is used.

Note: For some markets. this feature is disabled.

Use the brake shift interlock lever to move the gearshift lever from the park position in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle has a dead battery.

Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off before performing this procedure.

E184747

Using a flat head screwdriver or similar tool. remove the chrome bezel and gearshift bracket at the base of the gearshift lever.

E174501

Locate the white release lever and slide the lever forward when pulling the gearshift lever out of the park (P) position and into the neutral (N) position.

Reinstall the chrome bezel and the gearshift bracket.

Start your vehicle and release the parking brake.

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature is designed to increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm or soft shifts. This operation is normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time. the adaptive learning process fully updates transmission operation.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

Note: Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Transmission

Note: Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur. or the engine may overheat.

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow. you may rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears. stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Transmission

## **LIMITED SLIP DIFFERENTIAL**

(IF EQUIPPED)

Traction-Lok and TORSEN Axles

These axles provide improved traction on slippery and loose surfaces. particularly when one wheel is on a poor traction surface. Under normal conditions. these axles function like a standard rear axle.

Extended use of tire sizes other than the manufacturer's specified tire size on these axles could result in a permanent reduction in effectiveness. This loss does not affect your normal driving and should not be noticeable.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Rear Axle

### **GENERAL INFORMATION**

Note: Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal. continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present. the brake linings may be worn-out and an authorized dealer should check them. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking. an authorized dealer should check your vehicle.

Note: Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels. even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See Cleaning the Wheels (page 260).

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power.

If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Switch the engine off, move the transmission to park (P) and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

### Emergency Brake Assist

Emergency brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal.

Emergency brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Note: Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps could flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

### Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

This lamp momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the anti-lock braking system may be disabled. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the anti-lock brake system is disabled, normal braking is still effective.

See Warning Lamps and Indicators (page 85).

Note: Indicators vary depending on region.

### E270480

This lamp also illuminates momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the brake warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have the system checked immediately.

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risks when: You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you. Your vehicle is hydroplaning.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Brakes

You take corners too fast. The road surface is poor.

Note: If the system activates, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further.

Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

## PARKING BRAKE

### Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake and leave your vehicle with the transmission in park (P).

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to first gear. Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

### All Vehicles

**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

E223664

To set the parking brake, pull the parking brake handle up as far as possible.

To release the parking brake:

Press and hold the button at the end of the parking brake handle.

Pull the handle up slightly, then push the handle down.

## HILL START ASSIST

**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Brakes

**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on.

At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system turns off if there is a malfunction or if you excessively rev the engine.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary on a slope for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal.

This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal.

The brakes release when the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

The system activates on any slope that causes your vehicle to roll.

Note: There is no warning lamp to indicate the system is either on or off.

#### Using Hill Start Assist

Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed and shift into first gear when facing uphill or reverse (R) when facing downhill.

The system activates if the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope.

When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for a few seconds. This hold time increases if you are in the process of driving off.

Pull away in the normal manner.

#### Switching the System On and Off

##### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

##### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Brakes

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains.

for example, data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device.

If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the master reset function to erase the stored information. See Settings (page 382).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to your local Ford website.

Note: To find out if your vehicle has a connectivity technology, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).

#### Vehicles With an Emergency Call System

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other

Note: You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.

## PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, seatbelt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

For more information visit:

Web Address

FORD CREDIT

US Only

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

For assistance call 1-800-727-7000, or for more information about Ford Credit and access to the online Account Manager tool, visit [www.ford.com/finance](http://www.ford.com/finance).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

### USING TRACTION CONTROL

**WARNING:** The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the information display controls or the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Note: When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

### Switching the System Off

E166706

The switch for the stability and traction control system is on the instrument panel.

When you switch the system off, a message and an illuminated icon appear on the instrument cluster.

Use the switch again to return the traction control system to normal operation.

Your vehicle may have MyKey restrictions regarding this feature. See Principle of Operation (page 56).

### System Indicator Lights and Messages

E138639

The stability and traction control light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and flashes:

When a driving condition activates either of the systems. If a problem occurs in either of the systems.

E130458

The stability and traction control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on:

When you switch the traction control system off. When you select an alternative stability control mode.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Traction Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

**WARNING:** Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the electronic stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

**WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage.

Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your electronic stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If a fault occurs in either the stability control or the traction control system, you may experience the following conditions:

The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily. The stability control and traction control systems do not enhance your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

The stability and traction control light flashes. Your vehicle slows down. Reduced engine power. A vibration in the brake pedal. The brake pedal is stiffer than usual. If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the system applies higher brake force.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

## Electronic Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

## Traction Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See Using Traction Control (page 157).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Stability Control

E72903

Vehicle without stability control

Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

## USING STABILITY CONTROL

### Electronic Stability Control

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on. The electronic stability control portion of the system is disabled when the transmission is in reverse (R) or, on some models, if you press and hold the electronic stability control button for more than five seconds when you apply the brakes and the vehicle is at a stop. You can switch off the traction control portion of the system independently. See Using Traction Control (page 157).

### ESC features

Traction control system Electronic stability control

Stability control off light

Mode Button functions

Enabled On during bulb check

Default at start up

Disabled Enabled On Traction control off Button pressed momentarily

Enabled On Sport mode (if equipped) Button pressed twice rapidly

Disabled On ESC disabled Button pressed and held more than five seconds

Enabled Off ESC fully enabled Button pressed again after deactivation

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Stability Control

Note: Do not use the Sport stability control setting on public roadways.

Some models may also come equipped with a sport mode which allows the driver to reduce normal electronic stability control system intervention and provide a more spirited driving experience. To enter sport mode, toggle the stability control button twice rapidly. The message appears in the information display that the system is now in sport mode.

For vehicles equipped with the selectable drive mode feature, electronic stability control sport mode is not available. You can utilize the performance oriented electronic stability control mode by selecting track drive mode. In this mode, electronic stability control intervention is reduced and tuned specifically for track use only and is not for use on public roads.

In all of the selectable drive modes, you can disable traction control and electronic stability control with the electronic stability control switch.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Stability Control

#### PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.

**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

**Note:** If your vehicle has MyKey, the sensing system cannot be switched off when a MyKey is present. See Principle of Operation (page 56).

**Note:** Keep the sensors on the bumper or fascia free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

**Note:** Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

Note: When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid may detect the trailer and therefore provide an alert. Disable the rear parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system turns on automatically whenever you switch the ignition on.

You can switch the system off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). See General Information (page 90). If your vehicle has a parking aid button, you can switch the system off by pressing the button.

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display. See Information Messages (page 100).

## **REAR PARKING AID (IF EQUIPPED)**

**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Parking Aids

**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.

**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover up the sensors.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Note: Some accessories, for example large trailer hitches or bike or surfboard racks can cause reduced performance or false alerts.

The sensors are on the rear bumper.

The sensors are active when the transmission is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system may reduce the set volume.

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the center of the rear bumper.

Note: There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

E130178

The sensor coverage area is up to 70 in (180 cm) from the rear bumper.

If the system detects a fault, a warning message appears in the information display.

The system detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur: Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed. Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at low speed. Your vehicle is moving backward at low speed and an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at low speed.

If your vehicle remains stationary for two seconds the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

Note: If the detected object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the rear bumper, the audible warning does not turn off.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Parking Aids

Object Distance Indicator (If Equipped)

E190459

The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon. If the system does not detect an object, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

When you shift into reverse (R), the system provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving and the detected object is moving toward your vehicle. When you stop your vehicle, the audible warnings stop after two seconds.

Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).

## **REAR VIEW CAMERA**

**WARNING:** The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

**WARNING:** Reverse your vehicle as slow as possible. Higher speeds may limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.

**WARNING:** Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Some vehicles may not come equipped with guidelines.

**WARNING:** Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Parking Aids

E174502

The camera is located on the rear cargo door.

## Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

**Note:** The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.

The system uses two types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle: Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you. Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object.

**Note:** If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment is open, no camera features will display.

The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions: Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating. Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner. The camera is misaligned due to damage to the rear of your vehicle.

## Camera Guidelines

**Note:** Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

**Note:** Upon a battery disconnect, the active guidelines may not be functional until your vehicle has been driven a short distance and exceeds a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Parking Aids

E142436

### Active guidelines

#### Centerline

Fixed guideline: Green zone

Fixed guideline: Yellow zone

Fixed guideline: Red zone

### Rear bumper

Active guidelines only show with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not show when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing.

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

### Manual Zoom

**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

**Note:** Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R). When manual zoom is enabled, only the centerline is shown.

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This feature allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R). When the transmission shifts out of reverse (R), the feature automatically turns off and must be reset when it is used again.

### Camera System Settings

The rear view camera system settings can be accessed through the display screen.

See General Information (page 90).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Parking Aids

### Enhanced Park Aids or Park Pilot

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The system uses red, yellow and green highlights that appear on top of the video image when any of the sensing systems detect an object.

### Vehicles equipped with touchscreen

The system will provide an image of your vehicle and the sensor zones. The zones will highlight green, yellow and red when the parking aid sensors detect an object in the coverage area.

The coverage area is up to 6 ft (1.8 m) from the rear bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

### E130178

For additional information of the zone coverage and the rear sensing system. See Principle of Operation (page 161).

### Rear Camera Delay

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until: Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases. You shift your vehicle into park (P). You pull the hand brake on vehicles with a manual transmission.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Parking Aids

# REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

### Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

## Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision. but accidents do happen.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit. finish. structural integrity. corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

## Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts. For additional information. refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## **SPECIAL NOTICES**

### New Vehicle Limited Warranty

#### Vehicles sold in the United States and Canada

For a detailed description of what is covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty. see your warranty guide that is available online. For more information. refer to our website and download your copy of the warranty guide.

#### Vehicles sold outside the United States and Canada

For a detailed description of what is covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty. see the warranty guide that is provided to you along with your Owner's Manual.

### Special Instructions

For your added safety. your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

**WARNING:** You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Introduction

## **WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL**

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

### SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

**WARNING:** Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See Cruise Control (page 69).

Switching Cruise Control On

E265296

Press the button.

Switching Cruise Control Off

E265297

Press the button when the system is in standby mode.

The system also turns off when you switch the ignition off.

Note: The set speed erases when you switch the system off.

## **SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED**

**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.

Press either button to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: The indicator changes color in the information display.

Changing the Set Speed

Press and release the button to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the button to accelerate.

Release the button when you reach your preferred speed.

Press and release the button to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the button to decelerate.

Release the button when you reach your preferred speed.

Note: If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.

## **CANCELING THE SET SPEED**

E265298

Press the button. or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

Note: The system remembers the set speed.

Note: The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 10 mph (16 km/h) under the set speed when driving uphill.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Cruise Control

## **RESUMING THE SET SPEED**

Press the button.

### **CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS**

E71340

Illuminates when you switch the system on.

### **USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)**

**WARNING:** Always pay close attention to changing road conditions when using the system. It does not replace attentive driving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor.

In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not use the system when entering or leaving a highway. on roads with intersections or roundabouts or non-vehicular traffic or roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.

**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

**WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

**WARNING:** The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6 mph (10 km/h).

**WARNING:** The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

**WARNING:** The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

**WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.

Note: It is your responsibility to stay alert, drive safely and be in control of the vehicle at all times.

The system adjusts your vehicle speed to maintain the set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane.

You can select four gap settings.

The system uses a radar sensor that projects a beam directly in front of your vehicle.

E177068

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Cruise Control

The adaptive cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On

Press ON.

E144529

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

E164805

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the information display.

Drive to desired speed.

Press SET+ or SET-.

A green indicator light, the current gap setting and your set speed appear in the information display.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

E164805

A vehicle image illuminates if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

Following a Vehicle

**WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention.

Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor.

In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a direction indicator, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Note: The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until: The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed. The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in. Your vehicle speed falls below 12 mph (20 km/h). You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Cruise Control

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the information display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

## Setting the Gap Distance

Note: The gap setting is time dependent and therefore the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.

Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

E177070

E164805

The selected gap appears in the information display as shown by the bars in the image.

## Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Dynamic Behavior Distance Gap Graphic Display.

Bars Indicated Between Vehicles

Sport.

Closest.

Normal.

Close.

Normal.

Medium.

Comfort.

Far.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

#### Overriding the Set Speed

**WARNING:** If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

E144529

When you override the system, the green indicator light illuminates and the vehicle image does not appear in the information display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Cruise Control

##### Changing the Set Speed

Press SET+ or SET- to change the set speed in small increments. Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press SET+ or SET-. Press and hold SET+ or SET- to change the set speed in large increments. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

##### Canceling the Set Speed

Press CNCL or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

**Note:** For vehicles with manual transmission, if you press the clutch pedal for an extended period, this action also cancels the set speed.

##### Resuming the Set Speed

**Note:** Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

Press RES. Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting.

The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

## Automatic Cancellation

Note: If the engine speed drops too low, an audible warning sounds and a message appears in the information display.

Automatic braking releases.

The system does not operate below 12 mph (20 km/h).

## Hilly Condition Usage

Note: An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again after the brakes cool.

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep grades, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent it from overheating.

## Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off

Note: You erase the set speed and gap setting when you switch the system off.

Press OFF when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

## Detection Issues

**WARNING:** On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The radar sensor has a limited field of view.

It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle graphic does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019, enUSA.

Edition date: 201906, Second-Printing

## Cruise Control

E71621

Detection issues can occur:

When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.

With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.

There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and take action when necessary.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

#### System Not Available

The system may not turn on if there is: A blocked sensor. High brake temperature. A failure in the system or a related system.

#### Blocked Sensor

E252419

Note: You cannot see the sensor. It is behind the bumper fascia.

A message displays if something obstructs the radar signals from the sensor. The sensor is in the lower grille. The system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function when something blocks the sensor.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Cruise Control

Possible Causes and Actions for This Message Displaying:

##### Action Cause

Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.

The surface of the radar is dirty or obstructed.

Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that it is free from obstruction.

The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.

Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.

Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar signals.

Do not use the system in these conditions because it may not detect any vehicles ahead.

Water, snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.

Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.

#### Switching to Normal Cruise Control

WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

You can change from adaptive cruise control to normal cruise control through the information display.

E71340

The cruise control indicator light replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator light if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles.

Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Cruise Control

## **DRIVER ALERT (IF EQUIPPED)**

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

Note: Keep the windshield free from obstructions. For example, bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

Note: If the camera is blocked or if the windshield is damaged, the system may not function.

E249505

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior using various inputs including the front camera sensor.

If the system detects that your driving alertness is reduced below a certain threshold, the system will alert you using a tone and a message in the information display.

#### Using Driver Alert

##### Switching the system on and off

You may switch the system on or off through the information display. See General Information (page 90). When activated, the system will monitor your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors.

#### System Warnings

Note: The system does not issue warnings below approximately 40 mph (64 km/h).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Driving Aids

The warning system is in two stages. At first the system issues a temporary warning that you need to take a rest. This message will only appear for a short time. If the system detects further reduction in driving alertness, another warning may be issued which will remain in the information display for a longer time. Press OK on the steering wheel control to clear the warning

#### System Display

When active the system will run automatically in the background and only issue a warning if required.

Note: If the camera sensor cannot track the road lane markings or if your vehicle speed drops below approximately 40 mph (64 km/h), the system does not issue warnings.

#### Resetting the System

You can reset the system by either:

Switching the ignition off and on. Stopping the vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.

## **LANE KEEPING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)**

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked.

Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

Note: The system works above 40 mph (64 km/h).

Note: The system works as long as the camera can detect one lane marking.

Note: The system may not function if the camera is blocked, or if the windshield is damaged or dirty.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Driving Aids

Note: When you select aid or both modes and the system detects no steering activity for a short period, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands off driving.

## E249505

When you switch the system on and it detects an unintentional drift out of your lane is likely to occur, the system notifies or assists you to stay in your lane through the steering system and information display. In Alert mode, the system provides a warning by vibrating the steering wheel.

In Aid mode, the system provides steering assistance by gently counter steering your vehicle back into the lane.

When the system is functioning in the combined Alert and Aid mode, the system first provides steering assistance by gently counter steering your vehicle back into the lane, followed by a warning by vibrating the steering wheel if the vehicle is still out of the lane markings.

## Switching the System On and Off

Note: The system on or off setting remains stored until you manually change it unless the system detects a MyKey. If the system detects a MyKey, it defaults to on and the mode sets to alert.

E132099

Press the button on the direction indicator stalk to switch the system on or off.

### System Settings

The system allows you to change the following settings; Mode and Intensity. To view or adjust the settings. See Settings (page 382). The system stores the last-known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you switch on the system.

Mode: This setting allows you to select which of the system features you can enable.

E165515

Alert only – Provides a steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Driving Aids

**WARNING: NEVER** use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an **ACTIVE AIRBAG** in front of it.

**DEATH** or **SERIOUS INJURY** to the **CHILD** can occur.

### On Board Diagnostics Data Link Connector

**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

Your vehicle has an OBD Data Link Connector (DLC) that is used in conjunction with a diagnostic scan tool for vehicle diagnostics, repairs and reprogramming services. Installing an aftermarket device that uses the DLC during normal driving for purposes such as remote insurance company monitoring, transmission of vehicle data to other devices or entities, or altering the performance of the vehicle, may cause interference with or even damage to vehicle systems. We do not recommend or endorse the use of aftermarket plug-in devices unless approved by Ford. The vehicle Warranty will not cover damage caused by an aftermarket plug-in device.

### MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated

systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs.

However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

## EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Introduction

E165516

Aid only – Provides steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.

E165517

Alert

Alert + Aid – Provides steering assistance toward the lane center.

If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane after the lane keeping aid corrects the vehicle, the system provides a steering wheel vibration.

Note: The alert and aid diagrams illustrate general zone coverage. They do not provide exact zone parameters.

Intensity: This setting affects the intensity of the steering wheel vibration used for the alert and alert + aid modes. This setting does not affect the aid mode.

Low Normal High

System Display

E267130

If you switch the system on, a graphic with lane markings appears in the information display.

Note: Graphics can vary depending on the instrument cluster available in your vehicle.

E267131

If you have adaptive cruise control enabled and you are following a vehicle, additional graphics appear in the display.

When you switch off the system, the lane marking graphics do not display.

When the system is on, the color of the lane markings change to indicate the system status.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Driving Aids

Gray: Indicates that the system is temporarily unable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side(s).

This may be because:

Your vehicle is under the activation speed. The direction indicator is active. Your vehicle is in a dynamic maneuver. The road has no or poor lane markings in the camera field-of-view. The camera is obscured or unable to detect the lane markings due to environmental, traffic or vehicle conditions. For example, significant sun angles, shadows, snow, heavy rain or fog, following a large vehicle that is blocking or shadowing the lane or poor headlamp illumination.

See Troubleshooting for additional information.

Green: Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention, on the indicated side(s).

Yellow or Animated Graphics: Indicate that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.

Red: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

The system can be temporarily suppressed at any time by the following:

Quick braking. Fast acceleration. Using the direction indicator. Evasive steering maneuver. Driving too close to the lane markings.

## Troubleshooting

Why is the feature not available (lane markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?

Your vehicle speed is outside the operational range of the feature.

The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.

A quick intentional lane change has occurred.

Your vehicle stays too close to the lane markings.

Driving at high speeds in curves.

The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.

Ambiguous lane markings. for example in construction zones.

Rapid transition from light to dark. or from dark to light.

Sudden offset in lane markings.

ABS or AdvanceTrac is active.

There is a camera blockage due to dirt. grime. fog. frost or water on the windshield.

You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Driving Aids

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?

Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings or vice versa.

There is standing water on the road.

Faint lane markings. for example partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.

Lane width is too narrow or too wide.

The camera has not been calibrated after a windshield replacement.

Driving on tight roads or on uneven roads.

Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane. as expected. in the Aid or Aid + Alert mode?

High cross winds are present.

There is a large road crown.

Rough roads. grooves or shoulder drop-offs.

Heavy uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.

The tires have been changed. or the suspension has been modified.

#### BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

**WARNING:** Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Driving Aids

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

E255695

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 13 ft (4 m) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 59 ft (18 m) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 mph (48 km/h) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.

**Note:** The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.

### Using the Blind Spot Information System

#### Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur: You start your vehicle. You shift into drive (D). The vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

**Note:** The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

#### Vehicles with Manual Transmission

The system turns on when all of the following occur: You start your vehicle. The vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

**Note:** The system does not operate in reverse (R).

### System Lights and Messages

E142442

When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the direction indicator on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Driving Aids

**Note:** The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

### Blocked Sensors

E205199

The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors become blocked, a message may appear in the information display. See Information Messages (page 100). The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

### System Errors

If the system detects a fault, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays.

See Information Messages (page 100).

### Switching the System On and Off

You can switch the system off using the information display. See General Information (page 90). When you switch the system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

## **CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT (IF**

**EQUIPPED)**

**WARNING:** Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

The system alerts you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

### Using Cross Traffic Alert

The system detects vehicles that approach at a speed between 4 mph (6 km/h) and 37 mph (60 km/h). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Driving Aids

The system turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). The system turns off when you shift out of reverse (R).

#### E142440

The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.

#### E142441

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Driving Aids

Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

#### Cross Traffic Alert System Sensors

#### E205199

The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R).

#### Cross Traffic Alert System Limitations

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur: The sensors are blocked. Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors. Vehicles approach at speeds less than 4 mph (6 km/h) or greater than 37 mph (60 km/h). The vehicle speed is greater than 7 mph (12 km/h). You reverse out of an angled parking space.

#### Cross Traffic Alert Behavior When Trailer is Attached

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

Cross traffic alert remains on when you attach a trailer in vehicles that come with blind spot information system with trailer tow under the following conditions:

You connect a trailer. The trailer is a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 3 ft (1 m). You set the trailer length to 3 ft (1 m) in the information display.

See Blind Spot Information System (page 179).

#### Switching the System On and Off

To switch the system on or off, adjust the setting. Depending on your vehicle options, the setting could be in the following:

Information display. See General Information (page 90). Touchscreen. See Settings (page 382).

Note: The system turns on every time you switch the ignition on. To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

#### Cross Traffic Alert Indicator

E268294

When the system detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, a warning lamp illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the information display to show which side the approaching vehicle is coming from.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Driving Aids

Note: If arrows do not display, a message appears in the information display.

If the system malfunctions, a warning lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the information display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.

#### Cross Traffic Alert Information Messages

##### Action Message

Displays instead of indication arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.

##### Cross Traffic Alert

Indicates blocked cross traffic alert system sensors. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

##### Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual

The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

##### Cross Traffic System Fault

Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.

## STEERING

### Electric Power Steering

**WARNING:** The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Switch the ignition off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the ignition on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Your vehicle has an electric power steering system, there is no fluid reservoir, no maintenance is required.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving, electric power steering assistance is lost. The steering system still operates and you can steer your vehicle manually. Manually steering your vehicle requires more effort.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Driving Aids

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort required for you to steer your vehicle, this increased effort prevents overheating and permanent damage to the steering system. You do not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually.

Typical steering and driving maneuvers allow the system to cool and return to normal operation.

### Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for: Correct tire pressures. Uneven tire wear. Loose or worn suspension components. Loose or worn steering components. Improper vehicle alignment.

**Note:** A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.

### Adaptive Learning (If Equipped)

The electronic power steering system adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering feel. It communicates with the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems. Additionally, whenever the battery is

disconnected or a new battery installed. you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

## **PRE-COLLISION ASSIST (IF**

**EQUIPPED)**

**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on.

At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system does not detect vehicles that are driving in a different direction, cyclists or animals.

Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

**WARNING:** The system may fail or operate with reduced function during cold and severe weather conditions.

Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** In situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability, this may reduce system performance. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians with complex backgrounds.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Driving Aids

**WARNING:** The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.

### Using the Pre-Collision Assist System

The system is active at speeds above approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) and pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 50 mph (80 km/h).

E156130

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality:

Alert

Brake Support

Active Braking

E156131

Alert: When activated, a flashing visual warning and an audible warning tone sounds.

Brake Support: The design of the system helps reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system can apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.

Active Braking: Active braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help the driver reduce impact damage or avoid the crash completely.

Note: If you perceive Pre-Collision Assist alerts as being too frequent or disturbing, then you can reduce the alert sensitivity, though the manufacturer recommends using the highest sensitivity setting where possible. Setting lower sensitivity would lead to fewer and later system warnings.

Note: The system turns off when you manually disable AdvanceTrac, or when you select Track mode.

Distance Indication and Alert

Distance Indication and Alert is a function that provides a graphical indication of the time gap to other preceding vehicles traveling in the same direction. The Distance Indication and Alert screen in the information display shows a graphic similar to the one that follows.

E190004

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Driving Aids

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Introduction

If the time gap to a preceding vehicle is small, a red visual indication displays.

Note: Distance Indication and Alert deactivates and the graphics do not display when adaptive cruise control is active.

Time Gap Distance Gap Graphics Sensitivity Speed

>0.9sec >82 ft (25 m) Grey Normal 62 mph (100 km/h)

0.6sec - 0.9sec 56–82 ft (17–25 m) Yellow Normal 62 mph (100 km/h)

<0.6sec <56 ft (17 m) Red Normal 62 mph (100 km/h)

### Adjusting Pre-Collision Assist Settings

You can adjust the Alert and Distance Alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings by using the information display control.

See General Information (page 90).

You can switch the distance alert and indication function off using the information display controls. See General Information (page 90).

If required, you can switch active braking off using the information display controls.

See General Information (page 90).

Note: Active braking automatically turns on every time you switch your vehicle on.

### Blocked Sensors

E252419

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the information display, the radar signals or camera images are obstructed. The radar sensor is located behind a fascia cover near the driver side of the lower grille. With an obstructed radar, the Pre-Collision Assist system does not function and cannot detect a vehicle ahead. With the front camera obstructed, the Pre-Collision Assist system does not respond to pedestrians or stationary vehicles and the system performance on moving vehicles reduces. The following table lists possible causes and actions for when this message displays.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Driving Aids

#### Action Cause

Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.

The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed in some way.

Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.

The surface of the radar in the grille is clean but the message remains in the display.

The Pre-Collision Assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-Collision Assist should automatically reactivate a short time after the weather conditions improve.

Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.

The Pre-Collision Assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-Collision Assist should automatically reactivate a short time after the weather conditions improve.

Swirling water, or snow or ice on the surface of the road may interfere with the radar signals.

Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Radar is out of alignment due to a front end impact.

Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.

The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed in some way.

Wait a short time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.

Note: Proper system operation requires a clear view of the road by the camera. Have any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view repaired.

Note: If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Note: If your vehicle detects excessive heat at the camera or a potential misalignment condition, a message may display in the information display indicating temporary sensor unavailability. When operational conditions are correct, the message deactivates. For example, when the ambient temperature around the sensor decreases or the sensor automatically recalibrates successfully.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Driving Aids

## **DRIVE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)**

Selectable Drive Modes (If Equipped)

Selectable drive modes deliver a customized driving experience using a variety of electronic vehicle systems. The systems optimize vehicle dynamics and powertrain response based on your selected mode. Systems associated with selectable drive modes are:

Electronically power assisted steering.

See Steering (page 184). Electronic stability control and traction control maintain your vehicle control in adverse conditions or high performance driving. See Stability Control (page 158).

Electronic throttle control enhances the powertrain response to your driving input. Adaptive dampers (if equipped). Active exhaust adjusts the sound characteristics of your vehicle (if equipped).

Using Selectable Drive Modes

Note: Your vehicle may have some of the drive modes that follow.

E294773

To change the drive mode setting, press the mode button on the instrument panel under the display. The first press illuminates the selected mode. Subsequent presses change the selected mode.

Note: Mode changes are not available when the ignition is off or when the transmission is in reverse (R). Some modes may be unavailable when the transmission is in drive (D) or sport (S).

Modes: Normal – Best suited for everyday driving. If your vehicle has adaptive dampers, the suspension delivers a balanced combination of comfort and handling. Selectable steering defaults to Normal but can be changed using the steering button. Sport – Engages when you shift your automatic transmission into sport (S).

Sport mode increases throttle response and helps your vehicle accelerate faster, but does not change the vehicle dynamics or stability system. Sport + – Best suited for spirited driving. This mode increases throttle response, and if your vehicle has active exhaust, it takes on a more powerful tone. If your vehicle has adaptive dampers, the suspension becomes stiffer, body motion reduces and the steering becomes more precise.

Selectable steering defaults to Sport.

Depending on vehicle configuration, you may be able to change the selectable steering setting by pressing the steering button. Track – Provides a performance driving experience. Throttle response increases, and if your vehicle has active exhaust, it takes on a more powerful tone. A performance oriented traction control mode is automatically utilized.

In this mode, traction control intervention is reduced and tuned

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Driving Aids

Using MyMode (If Equipped)

E294774

You can use MyMode to create a unique drive mode.

To create or save MyMode, press the button on the steering wheel and access the menu. See General Information (page 90). The available systems display.

Select your desired settings using the appropriate buttons and menus. Press and hold OK to save your settings. MyMode is added to the drive mode list and can be selected the next time you drive your vehicle.

Note: The system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system to make sure it properly operates. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault or change in gear position, the selected mode defaults to Normal.

Note: Pre-Collision Assist is automatically disabled when Track mode is selected. See Pre-Collision Assist (page 185).

Note: If your vehicle has adaptive dampers, the steering setting is optimized to work with each drive mode. Other steering settings may not be available.

### Selectable Steering

Note: The steering setting defaults to Normal if the battery is disconnected or removed.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Driving Aids

#### E174705

Press the steering button on the instrument panel to change the steering feel. The first press illuminates the selected mode. Each time you press the button, it changes the mode.

Modes: Normal - Default factory setting. Sport - Slightly higher effort required for steering with more road force felt through the steering wheel. Comfort - Slightly less effort required for steering with less road force felt through the steering wheel.

Note: A soft feedback bump in the steering wheel may be felt after you make a selection.

### Adaptive Dampers (If Equipped)

#### E282723

Press the button on the steering wheel to adjust the suspension.

The first press illuminates the current mode. Each time you press the button, it changes the mode.

Adaptive damper modes: Normal — Available in Normal and Sport drive modes. Sport — Available in Normal, Sport and Track drive modes. Track — Available only in Track drive mode. Drag Strip— Available only in Drag Strip drive mode.

### Active Exhaust (If Equipped)

#### E287122

Press the button on the instrument panel under the display to adjust the tone of the exhaust.

Active Exhaust modes: Quiet - Lowers the noise of the exhaust. Normal - Default factory setting. Sport - Raises the noise of the exhaust. Track - Tunes the exhaust for track performance.

Note: The Track exhaust mode setting is only for use at tracks and not for use on public roadways. Use of this setting results in increased exterior noise, which may not meet state and local laws and regulations.

It is the obligation of the driver to operate the vehicle in a manner that complies with state and local requirements. Only use the Track Exhaust Mode setting at a competition track or an off-road course where elevated exterior vehicle noise is acceptable.

#### Rev Match (If Equipped)

This feature provides a heel and toe driving experience by predicting shifts and then quickly matching engine RPM to the new gear as it performs the shift.

You can switch this feature on or off through the information display. See General Information (page 90).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Driving Aids

## LOAD LIMIT

#### Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer

This section guides you in the proper loading of your vehicle, trailer, or both. Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance.

Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.

Tire and Loading Label Information Example:

E198719

#### Payload

Payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that your vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle appears on the Tire and Loading label. The label is either on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. Vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a tire and loading label. Look for "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg OR XXX lb" for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire and Loading Information label

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Load Carrying

**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more

cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

#### GAWR - Gross Axle Weight Rating

GAWR is the maximum allowable weight that a single axle (front or rear) can carry. These numbers are on the Safety Compliance Certification label. The label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

The total load on each axle must never exceed its Gross Axle Weight Rating.

#### GVWR - Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

GVWR is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle.

This includes all options, equipment, passengers and cargo.

It appears on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

The label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

The gross vehicle weight must never exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

#### Safety Compliance Certification Label Example:

E198828

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Load Carrying

**WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

#### Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight

Maximum loaded trailer weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. Consult an authorized dealer (or the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer) for more detailed information.

#### GCWR - Gross Combined Weight Rating

GCWR is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.) Separate functional brakes should

**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle. cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle. serious personal injury or death.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Load Carrying

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that can be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,000 lb. and there can be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. ( $1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650$  lb.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle.

That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If you are towing a trailer, load from your trailer is transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Helpful examples for calculating the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each.

The calculation would be:  $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$  pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$  kilograms.

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you

have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms). the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440$

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Load Carrying

$1200 - 240$  pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 - (2 \times 99) - (12 \times 45) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103$  kilograms.

You need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$  pounds. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 - (2 \times 99) - (9 \times 45) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32$  kilograms.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the front or the rear gross axle weight rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

#### Special Loading Instructions for all vehicles

**WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Load Carrying

## PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit [www.sustainability.ford.com](http://www.sustainability.ford.com).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Environment

## TOWING A TRAILER

**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

**WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage. transmission damage. structural damage. loss of vehicle control. vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Note: There may be electrical items such as fuses or relays that can affect trailer towing operation. See Fuses (page 221).

The load capacity of your vehicle is designated by weight not volume. You may not necessarily be able to use all available space when loading your vehicle or trailer.

Towing a trailer places extra load on the engine. transmission. axle. brakes. tires. and suspension. Inspect these components before. during and after towing.

#### Load Placement

To help minimize how trailer movement affects the vehicle when driving: Load the heaviest items closest to the trailer floor. Load the heaviest items in the center of the left and right side trailer tires. Load the heaviest items above the trailer axles or just slightly forward toward the trailer tongue. Do not allow the final trailer tongue weight to go above or below 10-15% of the loaded trailer weight. Select a ball mount with the correct rise or drop. When both the loaded vehicle and trailer are connected. the trailer frame should be level. or slightly angled down toward the vehicle. when viewed from the side.

When driving with a trailer or payload. a slight takeoff vibration or shudder may be present due to the increased payload weight.

Additional information regarding proper trailer loading and setting your vehicle up for towing is located in the Load Carrying chapter. See Load Limit (page 192).

You can also find information in the RV & Trailer Towing Guide available at your authorized dealer. or online.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Towing

##### RV & Trailer Towing Guide Online

##### RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

Note: Do not exceed the trailer weight for your vehicle configuration listed in the chart below.

Note: Be sure to take into consideration trailer frontal area.

Do not exceed 12 feet 2 (1.11 meters)

Note: For high altitude operation. reduce the gross combined weight by 2% per 1. 00 ft (300 m) starting at the 1. 00 ft (300 m) elevation point.

Note: Certain states require separate trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight. The maximum trailer weights listed may be limited to this specified weight, as the vehicle's electrical system may not include the wiring connector needed to activate electric trailer brakes.

Your vehicle may tow a trailer provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the maximum trailer weight listed for your vehicle configuration on the following chart.

Maximum Trailer Weight Powertrain

1.000 lb (454 kg) 2.3L GTDI

1.000 lb (454 kg) 5.0L TiVCT

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Towing

## ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Follow these guidelines for safe towing: Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1.00 mi (1.00 km). Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer. See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications. Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. See your scheduled maintenance information. If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

You can find information on load specification terms found on the tire label and Safety Compliance label as well as instructions on calculating your vehicle's load in the Load Carrying chapter. See Load Limit (page 192).

Remember to account for the trailer tongue weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Hitches

Do not use a hitch that either clamps onto the bumper or attaches to the axle.

Distribute the trailer load so 10-15% of the total trailer weight is on the tongue.

Safety Chains

Note: Never attach safety chains to the bumper.

Always connect the safety chains to the hook retainers of your vehicle hitch.

To connect the safety chains, cross them under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

**WARNING:** Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.

#### Trailer Lamps

**WARNING:** Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, direction indicators and hazard lights are working.

#### Before Towing a Trailer

Practice turning, stopping and backing up to get the feel of your vehicle-trailer combination before starting on a trip.

When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels clear curbs and other obstacles.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Towing

##### When Towing a Trailer

Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 mi (800 km). Do not make full-throttle starts. Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 50 mi (80 km). When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the transmission in park (P) or neutral (N) to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help air conditioning performance. Switch off the speed control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The speed control may turn off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades. Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective. If your transmission is equipped with a Grade Assist or Tow/Haul feature, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling. Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and brake gradually. Avoid parking on a slope. However, if you must park on a slope:

Turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow.

Set your vehicle parking brake.

Place the automatic transmission in park (P) or manual transmission in a low gear.

Place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels. Chocks are not included with your vehicle.

Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft (PWC)

Note: Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water.

Note: Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after removing the trailer from the water.

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval: Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper. Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 in (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components: Causing internal damage to the components. Affecting driveability, emissions, and reliability.

Any time the rear axle submerges in water, replace the rear axle lubricant. Water may contaminate the rear axle lubricant, which is not a normal maintenance inspection item unless there is a possibility of a leak or other axle repair is required.

## **TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS**

Emergency Towing

**WARNING:** If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Towing

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration, under the following conditions: Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction. Place the transmission in neutral (N).

If you cannot shift the transmission into neutral (N), you may need to override the gear shifter. See Transmission (page 147). Failing to do so may result in damage to the transmission. Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h). Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

Recreational Towing

You cannot recreational tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground because vehicle or transmission damage may occur.

We recommend towing your vehicle with all four wheels off the ground such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, you cannot recreational tow your vehicle.

Towing

## OPENING THE CONVERTIBLE TOP

When you use the top, you must first unlatch it from the windshield and then use the convertible top control.

Note: The convertible top does not operate unless the vehicle is stationary or traveling under 3 mph (5 km/h). A chime sounds and a warning message appears in the instrument panel. When you slow down, the top operates.

Note: When you latch or unlatch the convertible top, the audio system mutes briefly. This allows the vehicle to optimize the cabin's sound quality depending on the position of the convertible top.

To unlatch the convertible top:

Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.

The ignition must be on. We recommend that the vehicle remains running when you open the top to prevent draining the battery.

Check the convertible top stowage compartment behind the rear seat to be sure it is empty. Make sure the convertible top outer surface is free of debris.

Move the latch handle, above the interior mirror, down toward the windshield and rotate the handle clockwise to release the convertible top.

E174571

The windows open automatically when you press the convertible top control.

To open the convertible top:

Press and hold the convertible top control on the overhead console, until the windows are completely down and the top stores completely.

Release the convertible top control.

E174568

Note: Do not store articles behind the rear seat. Articles in the convertible top stowage compartment may break the rear glass window when you open the top.

Note: Opening the convertible top when the top material is wet may cause mold or mildew.

## Using the Tonneau Caps

Your convertible top also includes two tonneau caps. one for each side of the vehicle. These caps stow inside the trunk.

E205441

Leading edge.

A.

Side edge.

B.

After opening your convertible top. place the tonneau caps between the top and your vehicle trim moulding:

Insert tab A under the trim.

When tab A is under the trim slot. angle B down so the edges slide under the surrounding moulding and secure into place between the trim edges.

Repeat Steps 1 and 2 on the opposite side of the vehicle to install the second tonneau cap.

## CLOSING THE CONVERTIBLE TOP

Closing the convertible top is a three-step process: Remove both of the tonneau caps. press the convertible top control to close the top. and then close the latch.

To remove the tonneau caps:

Slide B toward the center of the vehicle to release the edges from the surrounding trim.

Lift up on B. and then pull the piece back to release tab A from the trim.

Repeat Steps 1 and 2 on the opposite side of the vehicle.

Make sure you stow both pieces in the trunk.

E179941

Note: The convertible top does not operate unless the vehicle is stationary or traveling under 3 mph (5 km/h). A chime sounds and a warning message appears in the instrument panel. When you slow down. the top operates.

Note: You must remove the tonneau caps before you are able to close the top or a chime sounds and a warning message appears in the instrument panel. Remove and stow the caps in the trunk. and then press the convertible top control again.

Note: When you latch or unlatch the convertible top. the audio system mutes briefly. This allows the vehicle to optimize the cabin's sound quality depending on the position of the convertible top.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Convertible Top (If Equipped)

To close the convertible top:

Bring the vehicle to a complete stop and make sure you switch the ignition on. We recommend that the vehicle remains running when you open the top to prevent draining the battery.

Press and hold the convertible top control. When the convertible latch handle is within reach, make sure it is down and that you rotate it clockwise so the latch is in the fully opened position. Continue pressing the convertible top control until the windows lower completely, and the top unfolds and moves forward toward the windshield header.

When the top lines up evenly with the windshield header, release the convertible top control.

E174568

The final step when closing the convertible top is to lock the latch.

To lock the latch on the convertible top:

Pull down on the latch handle and rotate it counter-clockwise to secure the convertible top.

After securing the convertible top fully, push the latch handle up into the stowed position to secure the latch.

E178453

Note: If you keep the top open for an extended period of time or if the temperature is low, the top material may shrink slightly. If this happens, pull on the latch handle to secure the top.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Convertible Top (If Equipped)

## REDUCED ENGINE PERFORMANCE

**WARNING:** If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the upper limit position, the engine is overheating. See Gauges (page 83).

You must only drive your vehicle for a short distance if the engine overheats. The distance you can travel depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain. The engine continues to operate with limited power for a short period of time.

If the engine temperature continues to rise, the fuel supply to the engine reduces. The air conditioning switches off and the engine cooling fan operates continually.

Gradually reduce your speed and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Immediately switch the engine off to prevent severe engine damage.

Wait for the engine to cool down.

Check the coolant level. See Engine Coolant Check (page 240).

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Reduced Vehicle Top Speed

Your vehicle's ability to reach and maintain top speed is partially dependent upon ambient temperature. Under certain environmental conditions, your vehicle's top speed may be reduced to protect powertrain components.

## ECONOMICAL DRIVING

Fuel economy is affected by several things such as how you drive, the conditions you drive under and how you maintain your vehicle.

There are some things to keep in mind that may improve your fuel economy: Accelerate and slow down in a smooth, moderate fashion. Drive at steady speeds. Anticipate stops; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop. Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving (When running errands, go to the furthest destination first and then work your way back home). Close the windows for high-speed driving. Drive at reasonable speeds. Keep the tires properly inflated and use only the recommended size. Use the recommended engine oil. Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

There are also some things you may want to avoid doing because they reduce your fuel economy: Avoid sudden or hard accelerations. Avoid revving the engine before turning off the car. Avoid long idle periods.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Driving Hints

Do not warm up your vehicle on cold mornings. Reduce the use of air conditioning and heat. Avoid using speed control in hilly terrain. Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving. Avoid carrying unnecessary weight. Avoid adding particular accessories to your vehicle (e.g. bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski racks). Avoid driving with the wheels out of alignment.

### COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -13°F (-25°C).

## BREAKING-IN

### Tires

New tires need to be run-in for approximately 300 mi (500 km). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

### Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 100 mi (150 km) in town and for the first 1,000 mi (1,600 km) on freeways.

### Engine

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1,000 mi (1,600 km). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

### Ground Clearance

#### GT Performance Package Level 2 Only

Since ground clearance is reduced, use caution when approaching curbs or curb stops from the front and rear as vehicle damage may occur. Additionally, when crossing speed bumps or driveway curbs, you should approach at a 45 degree angle to reduce the risk of vehicle damage.

Your vehicle carries the same warranty as other Ford models. Damage caused by accidents, crashes or objects striking the vehicle, including driving through a car wash, or misuse of the vehicle, such as driving over curbs, overloading or racing is not covered under the new vehicle limited warranty. See the Warranty Guide for complete information.

## DRIVING THROUGH WATER

**WARNING:** Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

**Note:** Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.

**Note:** Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Driving Hints

## INSTRUMENT PANEL

E250044

Air vents.

Direction indicators. See Direction Indicators (page 76).

Instrument cluster. See Instrument Cluster (page 83).

Wiper lever. See Wipers and Washers (page 71).

Information and entertainment display. See General Information (page 351).

Audio unit. See Audio System (page 324).

Drive control switches. See Drive Control (page 189).

Climate controls. See Climate Control (page 111).

Climate controlled seats. See Climate Controlled Seats (page 123).

Hazard flasher switch. See Hazard Flashers (page 209).

Keyless start button. See Keyless Starting (page 131).

Information display controls. See Information Display Control (page 69).

Steering wheel adjustment. See Adjusting the Steering Wheel (page 68).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

At a Glance

E266447

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle.

Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work. Check that the horn works. Check that the exterior lights work. Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

## FLOOR MATS

**WARNING:** Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle. personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle. personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

E142666

To install the floor mats. position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position.

To remove the floor mat. reverse the installation procedure.

Note: Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Driving Hints

## **ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE**

Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern. Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

The service is available: 24 hours a day. seven days a week. For the coverage period supplied with your vehicle.

Roadside Assistance covers: A flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles supplied with a tire inflation kit). Battery jump start. Lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility). Fuel delivery — independent service contractors. if not prohibited by state. local or municipal law. shall deliver up to 2 gal (8 L) of gasoline or 5 gal (20 L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle.

Roadside Assistance limits fuel delivery service to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period. Winch out — available within 100 ft (30 m) of a paved or county maintained road. no recoveries.

Towing — independent service contractors. if not prohibited by state. local or municipal law. shall tow Ford eligible vehicles to an authorized dealer within 35 mi (56 km) of the disablement location

or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests a tow to an authorized dealer that is more than 35 mi (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 mi (56 km). Roadside Assistance includes up to \$200 for a towed trailer if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the towing vehicle is operational but the trailer is not, then the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

#### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. This card is in the Owner's Manual kit.

United States vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company reimburses a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 mi (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, United States vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673.

Customers need to submit their original receipts.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Roadside Emergencies

##### Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is eligible within Canada or the continental United States.

The service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, but the coverage is concurrent with the powertrain coverage period of your vehicle. Canadian roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage.

If you require more information, please call us in Canada at 1-800-665-2006, or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca).

#### HAZARD FLASHERS

Note: The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery loses charge. As a result, there may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.

The flasher control is on the instrument panel. Use your hazard flashers when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

Press the flasher control and all front and rear direction indicators flash. Press the button again to switch them off.

## FUEL SHUTOFF

**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

**Note:** When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart.

Once the vehicle determines the systems are safe, then the vehicle allows you to restart.

**Note:** In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact a qualified technician.

The fuel pump shutoff stops the flow of fuel to the engine in the event of a moderate to severe crash. Not every impact causes a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a crash, you may restart your vehicle.

Press START/STOP to switch off your vehicle.

Press the brake pedal and START/STOP to switch on your vehicle.

Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press START/STOP to switch off your vehicle.

You can attempt to start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal and START/STOP, or press START/STOP without pressing the brake pedal.

If the vehicle does not start, repeat steps 1 through 4.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019, enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Roadside Emergencies

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery.

When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes.

Always provide correct ventilation.

**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Note: Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

Note: Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.

### Preparing Your Vehicle

Note: Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle. making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

### Removing the Battery Shield

The battery is on the passenger side underneath the battery shield.

E281082

Rotate and release three fasteners by hand from the battery shield.

Remove the battery shield from the vehicle.

### Connecting the Jumper Cables

**WARNING:** Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

**WARNING:** Do not use fuel lines, engine valve covers, windshield wiper arms, the intake manifold, or hood latch as ground points.

Note: If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow that manufacturer's instructions.

Note: In the illustration, the vehicle shown is being jumped.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Roadside Emergencies

E274298

Note: In the illustration that follows, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.

E281345

Pull the red rubber boot backwards.

Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.

Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.

Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine. as shown in the following illustration. away from the battery and the fuel injection system. or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.

E204033

#### Starting the Engine

Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine. or gently press the accelerator to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM. as shown in your tachometer.

Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

Once you start the disabled vehicle. run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

#### Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Roadside Emergencies

E281345

Remove the negative (-) jumper cable from the disabled vehicle.

Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.

Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.

Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle battery.

Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.

#### Installing the Battery Shield

E280805

Install the battery shield on the vehicle.

Install in reverse direction. Tighten three fasteners by hand.

## **POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM**

The system flashes the direction indicators and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front. side. side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the seatbelt pretensioners.

The horn and indicators turn off when: You press the hazard control button. You press the panic button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped). Your vehicle runs out of power. Sounding of the horn is only enabled in specific markets.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Roadside Emergencies

## **TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE**

E143886

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. We do not approve a slingbelt towing procedure.

If you tow your vehicle incorrectly, or by any other means, vehicle damage may occur.

The rear wheels must be on a tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the front using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission.

The front wheels must be on a tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the rear using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the front fascia.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Roadside Emergencies

## **GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED**

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

Away From Home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

Mailing address

Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center P.O. Box 6248 Dearborn, MI 48126

Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD) (TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952) If your vehicle is configured as a motorhome please call 1-800-444-3311 for support.

Additional information and resources are available online:

Website

These are some of the items that can be found online: U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name,

City/State or Zip Code, Owner Manuals, Maintenance Schedules, Recalls, Ford Extended Service Plans, Ford Genuine Accessories, Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

Mailing address

Customer Relationship Centre Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited P.O. Box 2000 Oakville, Ontario L6K 0C8

Telephone

## **1-800-565-3673 (FORD)**

Website

Twitter

+FordServiceCA (English Canada)

+FordServiceQC (Quebec)

Additional Assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling or servicing authorized dealer.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Customer Assistance

If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager.

Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.

If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

In order to help us serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center: Vehicle Identification Number. Your telephone number (home and business). The name of the authorized dealer and city where located. The vehicle's current odometer reading.

In some states within the United States, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws, and Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt.

Additionally, in some states within the United States, a consumer has the option of submitting a warranty dispute to the BBB Auto Line before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws.

This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

## **IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)**

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 mi (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR

Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR

The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time).

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company 16800 Executive Plaza Drive Mail Drop 3NE-B Dearborn, MI 48126

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Customer Assistance

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b).

You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

#### THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration.

During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB.

You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application.

You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100. or writing to:

BBB AUTO LINE 3033 Wilson Boulevard. Suite 600 Arlington. Virginia 22201

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

For additional information refer to the Better Business Bureau website.

Note: Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations. modify procedures. or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Customer Assistance

Horn.

Cruise control switches. See Cruise Control (page 167).

Audio control. See Audio Control (page 68).

Luggage compartment release button. See Locking and Unlocking (page 60).

Lighting control. See Lighting (page 73).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

At a Glance

UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory. Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program. impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties. make decisions and. when appropriate. render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast. fair. and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit [www.camvap.ca](http://www.camvap.ca).

#### GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel or petrol/gas engines or the proper sulfur fuel for diesel engines.

If you cannot find the proper fuel recommended for your vehicle, contact our Customer Relationship Center.

The use of improper fuels in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company or Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using improper fuels may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the United States.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region,

Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands and/or Puerto Rico, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel and the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact the corresponding Ford Customer Assistance Center:

## FORD MOTOR COMPANY

Customer Relationship Centers in:

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Customer Assistance

E-mail Fax Phone Customer Relationship Center

Ford

Middle East

80004443673

Lincoln 80004441067

UAE 80004441066

Saudi Arabia 8008443673

Mobily and Zain cell phone users in Saudi 800850078

Kuwait 22280384

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations. register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Global Trade Services by emailing. [expcso@ford.com](mailto:expcso@ford.com).

If you are in another foreign country. contact the nearest authorized dealer. In the event your inquiry is unresolved. communicate your concern with the dealership's Sales Manager. Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.

If you require additional assistance or clarification. please contact the respective Customer Relationship Center as previously listed.

Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Customer Assistance

## **ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE**

To order the publications in this portfolio. contact Helm. Incorporated at:

HELM. INCORPORATED 47911 Halyard Drive Plymouth. Michigan 48170 Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog. call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm. Incorporated can also be reached by their website:

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card. check or money order.)

Obtaining a French Owner's Manual

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm. Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

## **REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)**

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death. you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints. it may open an investigation. and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles. it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However.

NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you. your dealer. or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov); or write to: Administrator 1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast Washington, D.C. 20590 You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov).

#### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Ford of Canada.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Customer Assistance

Transport Canada Contact Information

1-800-333-0510 Phone

Ford of Canada Contact Information

1-800-565-3673 Phone

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Customer Assistance

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Power Distribution Box

**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

The power distribution box is in the engine compartment. It has high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

If you disconnect and reconnect the battery, you need to reset some features.

See Changing the 12V Battery (page 246).

Replace fuses with the same type and rating. See Changing a Fuse (page 230).

E286912

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Fuses

Protected Component Fuse Rating Fuse or Relay Number

Convertible top master motor (base).

Not used (GT350. GT500).

Not used.

Steering column lock relay (base. GT350).

Transmission control unit (GT500).

Brake on-off switch.

Horn.

Powertrain control module relay.

Air conditioning clutch.

Voltage quality module.

Steering column lock relay (GT500).

Not used (base. GT350).

Windshield wiper motor.

Not used.

Automatic brake system valve.

Electronic fan 1 (GT350).

Not used (base. GT500).

Starter motor solenoid.

Electronic fan 3 (GT350).

Not used (base. GT500).

Latch relay coil.

Run/start (base).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Fuses

Protected Component Fuse Rating Fuse or Relay Number

Not used (GT350).

Not used.

Horn relay.

Cigar lighter.

Auxiliary power point.

Electronic fan 2 (base. GT350).

Not used (GT500).

Not used.

Air conditioning clutch relay.

Not used.

Exhaust valves relay.

Powertrain control module.

Not used.

Anti-lock brakes run/start switch.

Not used.

Electronic power assist steering.

Not used.

Blind spot information system.

Rear view camera.

Rear window defroster relay coils.

Vehicle dynamics module.

Not used.

Headlamp leveling switch (base).

Signature lighting (GT350. GT500).

Cigar lighter relay. Auxiliary power point relay.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Fuses

## GENERAL INFORMATION

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children.

**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle.

Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

**WARNING:** All children are shaped differently. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, base their recommendations for child restraints on probable child

height, age and weight thresholds, or on the minimum requirements of the law. We recommend that you check with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician

(CPST) to make sure that you properly install the child restraint in your vehicle and that you consult your pediatrician to make sure you have a child restraint appropriate for your child. To locate a child restraint fitting station and CPST, contact NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to [www.nhtsa.dot.gov](http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov). In Canada, contact Transport Canada toll free at 1-800-333-0371 or go to [www.tc.gc.ca](http://www.tc.gc.ca) to find a Child Car Seat Clinic in your area. Failure to properly restrain children in child restraints made especially for their height, age and weight, may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Child Safety

Protected Component Fuse Rating Fuse or Relay Number

Fuel pump #2 relay (GT350, GT500).

Not used (base).

Fuel pump relay.

1 J-case fuses.

2 M-case fuses.

3 Micro fuses.

Note: Spare fuse amperage may vary.

## Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel

The fuse panel is in the right-hand side of the passenger footwell behind a trim panel and plastic key code card.

To remove the trim panel, lift it from the rear retaining hooks, while pulling it toward you and swinging it away from the side. To reinstall it, line up the tabs with the grooves on the panel, drop the panel back into place, and then push it shut.

To reach the fuse panel, first remove the key code card.

After replacing a fuse, return the key code card to the original position. To reinstall the trim panel, lineup the tabs with the grooves on the panel, drop the panel back into place, and then push it shut to reinstall the trim panel.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Fuses

Protected Component Fuse Rating Fuse or Relay Number

Telematic control unit - modem.

Not used.

Not used.

Not used.

Electronic control panel.

7.5A Gateway module.

Gear shift module (GT500).

Steering column control module.

7.5A Instrument cluster.

Not used.

SYNC. Gauges.

Not used.

Headlamp leveling switch (base).

7.5A

Not used (GT350. GT500).

Not used.

7.5A

Not used.

In-vehicle temperature and humidity sensor.

Auxiliary body module.

Amplifier.

Vehicle dynamics module.

Ambient lighting module (base). Auxiliary body module.

Right-hand front-window motor (power distribution module).

Passenger door control unit.

Left-hand rear-window power (base).

Not used (GT350. GT500).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Fuses

Protected Component Fuse Rating Fuse or Relay Number

Right-hand rear-window power (base).

Not used (GT350. GT500).

Gateway module (base). Not used (spare) (GT350. GT500).

Not used (spare)

Remote keyless entry.

Audio unit.

Not used.

Run/start bus.

Power distribution box run/start relay (base).

Not used (GT350. GT500).

Front camera (base).

Not used (GT350. GT500).

Heated steering wheel module (base). Run/start powertrain control module (GT350).

Not used (GT500).

Note: Spare fuse amperage may vary.

## CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses

**WARNING:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

E217331

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Fuses

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within

Fuse Types

E207206

Fuse Type Callout

Micro 2

Micro 3

Maxi

Mini

M Case

J Case

J Case Low Profile

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Fuses

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly.

They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

## Precautions

Do not work on a hot engine. Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts. Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation. Keep all open flames and other burning material, such as cigarettes, away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

## Working with the Engine Off

Set the parking brake and shift the transmission to park (P), for automatic transmission, or neutral (N), for manual transmission.

Switch off the engine.

Block the wheels.

## Working with the Engine On

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

Set the parking brake and shift the transmission to park (P), for automatic transmission, or neutral (N), for manual transmission.

Block the wheels.

## **OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD**

Opening the Hood

E142457

Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

Slightly lift the hood.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Maintenance

E174561

Release the hood latch by pushing the secondary release lever to your left-hand side.

E256471

Open the hood. Support the hood with the strut.

Closing the Hood

Remove the hood strut from the catch and secure it correctly after use.

Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 8–12 in (20–30 cm).

Note: Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Maintenance

## **UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.3L ECOBOOST**

E174450

Battery (out of view). See Changing the 12V Battery (page 246).

Engine oil dipstick. See Engine Oil Dipstick (page 237).

Engine oil filler cap. See Engine Oil Check (page 237).

Brake fluid reservoir. See Brake Fluid Check (page 245).

Air filter assembly. See Changing the Engine Air Filter (page 239).

Engine coolant reservoir. See Engine Coolant Check (page 240).

Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See Washer Fluid Check (page 250).

Power distribution box. See Fuses (page 221).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Maintenance

## **UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 5.0L. BULLITT**

E296063

Battery. See Changing the 12V Battery (page 246).

Engine oil filler cap. See Engine Oil Check (page 237).

Engine oil dipstick. See Engine Oil Dipstick (page 237).

Brake fluid reservoir. See Brake Fluid Check (page 245).

Air filter assembly. See Changing the Engine Air Filter (page 239).

Engine coolant reservoir. See Engine Coolant Check (page 240).

Windshield washer reservoir. See Washer Fluid Check (page 250).

Power distribution box. See Changing a Fuse (page 230).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Maintenance

Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children

Recommended Restraint Type Child Size. Height. Weight. or Age Child

Use a child restraint (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).

Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).

Infants or toddlers

Use a belt-positioning booster seat.

Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child restraint (generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).

## Small children

Use a vehicle seatbelt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips. shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest. and seat backrest upright.

Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 57 in (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).

## Larger children

You are required by law to properly use child restraints for infants and toddlers in the United States and Canada. Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight. a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall. or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.

When possible. properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle.

Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position. See Front Passenger Sensing System (page 42). When installing a rear facing child restraint. adjust the vehicle seats to avoid interference between the child restraint and the vehicle seat in front of the child restraint.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Child Safety

# ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK

E161560

## ENGINE OIL CHECK

To check the engine oil level consistently and accurately. do the following:

Make sure the parking brake is on. Make sure the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.

Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.

Switch the engine off and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan. Checking the engine oil level too soon after you switch the engine off may result in an inaccurate reading.

Open the hood. See Opening and Closing the Hood (page 232).

Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean. lint-free cloth. See Under Hood Overview (page 234).

Reinstall the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level. See Engine Oil Dipstick (page 237).

Make sure that the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See Capacities and Specifications (page 303).

If the oil level is correct, replace the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.

Note: Do not remove the dipstick when the engine is running.

Note: If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.

Note: The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).

### Adding Engine Oil

**WARNING:** Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

E142732

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Maintenance

Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

To top up the engine oil level do the following:

Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.

Remove the engine oil filler cap. See Under Hood Overview (page 234).

Turn it counterclockwise and remove it.

Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See Capacities and Specifications (page 303). You may have to use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.

Recheck the oil level.

If the oil level is correct, replace the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.

Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

Note: Make sure you install the oil filler cap correctly.

Note: Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.

## OIL CHANGE INDICATOR RESET

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to reset the oil change indicator.

From the main menu scroll to:

Action and description Message

Press the right arrow button. then from this menu scroll to the following message.

Settings

Press OK Advanced Settings

Press the right arrow button. then from this menu scroll to the following message.

Vehicle

Press the right arrow button. then from this menu scroll to the following message.

Oil Life

Press and hold the OK button until the instrument cluster displays the following message.

Hold OK to Reset

Reset Successful

When the oil change indicator resets the instrument cluster displays 100%.

Remaining Life

{00}%

If the instrument cluster displays one of the following messages. repeat the process.

Not Reset

Reset Cancelled

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Maintenance

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - 2.3L ECOBOOST/ 5.0L

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries. do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

**Note:** Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

Only use the specified replacement air filter. See Motorcraft Parts (page 298).

For EcoBoost equipped vehicles: When servicing the air cleaner, it is important that no foreign material enter the air induction system. The engine and turbocharger are susceptible to damage from even small particles.

Change the air filter element at the proper intervals. See Scheduled Maintenance (page 400).

E175951

Release the two clamps that secure the air filter housing cover.

Carefully lift the air filter housing cover.

Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.

Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing and cover to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and that you have a good seal.

Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if it is not properly seated.

Replace the air filter housing cover.

Engage the clamps to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - 5.0L BULLITT

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

See the scheduled maintenance information for the appropriate intervals for changing the air filter element.

When changing the air filter element, use only the Motorcraft air filter element listed. See the Motorcraft part numbers in the Capacities and Specifications chapter.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Maintenance

E272660

E272661

Remove the two sensor wire harness retainers from the air box studs located on the front side of the air box.

Remove the four studs that fasten the upper air box housing to the lower air box housing.

Separate the upper air box housing from the lower air box housing.

Loosen the air filter clamp enough to allow the filter to slip off the housing easily.

Remove the air filter from the air filter housing.

Wipe the newly-exposed air filter outlet tube clamping area clean to remove any dirt or debris.

Install a new air filter, taking care not to damage the air filter element. Align the tab on the closed end of the filter with the notch in the air filter housing.

Tighten the air filter clamp down.

Note: Do not overtighten the clamp or studs when reinstalling.

Reinstall the upper air box piece to the lower air box piece. Tighten the 4 studs down.

Reinstall the two sensor wire harness retainers to the mating air box studs.

## **ENGINE COOLANT CHECK**

**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

**WARNING:** Do not add coolant further than the MAX mark.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Maintenance

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See Scheduled Maintenance (page 400).

Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the coolant reservoir.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the MAX mark.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -29°F (-34°C) and -35°F (-37°C). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

### Adding Coolant

**WARNING:** Do not add engine coolant when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See Capacities and Specifications (page 297). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with distilled water. See Capacities and Specifications (page 297).

Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.

**Note:** Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.

Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See Capacities and Specifications (page 297).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Maintenance

Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.

Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.

Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

In this instance, qualified personnel:

Must drain the cooling system.

Chemically clean the coolant system.

Refill with engine coolant as soon as possible.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute: Alcohol, Methanol, Brine. Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

#### Recycled Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant as an approved recycling process is not yet available.

Note: Dispose of used coolant in the appropriate manner.

Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

#### Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates: It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%. A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates: You can decrease the coolant concentration to 40%. Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the freeze and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

#### Coolant Change

At specific mileage intervals, as listed in the scheduled maintenance information, the coolant should be changed. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See Capacities and Specifications (page 297).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Maintenance

### Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs. The fail-safe distance depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

#### How Fail-Safe Cooling Works

If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone:

A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however: Engine power is limited. The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

#### When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated

**WARNING:** Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain

**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode. Drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.

If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.

If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.

Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Maintenance

Engine Coolant Temperature Management (If Equipped)

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and ambient temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive.

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).

Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.

Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark. add prediluted coolant immediately.

If the coolant level is normal. restart the engine and continue.

## **MANUAL TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK**

Clean the filler plug. The filler plug is on the right-hand side of the transmission.

E174951

Remove the filler plug.

The correct fluid fill level is 0.0–0.1 in (0–3 mm) below the bottom edge of the filler hole.

Add fluid through the filler hole.

Install the filler plug.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Maintenance

Tighten the filler plug until you feel a strong resistance.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications. See Capacities and Specifications (page 297).

### **AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK**

If required. have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid at the correct service interval. See Scheduled Maintenance (page 400).

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

Refer to your scheduled maintenance information for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However. if the transmission slips. shifts slowly or if you notice a sign of leaking fluid. contact an authorized dealer.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives. treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

## **BRAKE FLUID CHECK**

**WARNING:** Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control. serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt. water. petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control. serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

**WARNING:** The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the MIN mark or above the MAX mark on the brake fluid reservoir.

E170684

Park your vehicle on a level surface.

Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the MIN and the MAX marks on the reservoir.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Maintenance

**Note:** If the brake fluid level is between the MIN and the MAX marks on the reservoir, it is acceptable.

**Note:** If the brake fluid level is below the MIN mark or above the MAX mark, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See Capacities and Specifications (page 297).

Brake Fluid Service Interval

Brake fluid absorbs water over time which degrades the effectiveness of the brake fluid. Change the brake fluid at the specified intervals to prevent degraded braking performance.

For detailed interval information, see Scheduled Maintenance in your Owner's Manual or your local maintenance guide.

## **CLUTCH FLUID CHECK MANUAL TRANSMISSION**

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See Brake Fluid Check (page 245).

### **POWER STEERING FLUID CHECK**

Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power steering (EPS) system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.

### **CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY**

**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery.

When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes.

Always provide correct ventilation.

**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash your hands after handling.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Maintenance

## **INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS**

Child Seats

E142594

Use a child restraint (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat) for infants, toddlers, or children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).

Using Lap and Shoulder Belts

**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible.

Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

When installing a child restraint with combination lap and shoulder belts: Use the correct seatbelt buckle for that seating position. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap

and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle. Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the child restraint, with the tongue between the child restraint and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling. Place the vehicle seat in the upright position before you install the child restraint. Put the seatbelt in the automatic locking mode. See Step 5. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

Perform the following steps when installing the child restraint with combination lap and shoulder belts:

Note: Although the child restraint illustrated is a forward facing child restraint, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child restraint.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Child Safety

**WARNING:** This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power.

Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.

**WARNING:** For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is in the engine compartment.

See Under Hood Overview (page 234).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover and vent hose, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

Note: If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.

If you replace the battery make sure it matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

## Battery Management System (If

### Equipped)

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life. If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are: Heated rear window. Heated seats. Climate control. Heated steering wheel. Audio unit. Navigation system.

A message may appear in the information displays to alert you that battery protection actions are active. These messages are only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge.

During this time your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Maintenance

Note: Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system may temporarily disable some electrical systems.

### Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it may adversely affect battery performance and durability.

This may also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

### Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.

Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.

Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be

stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal.

Disconnect the positive battery cable terminal.

Remove the battery securing clamp.

Remove the battery.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.

Note: Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features: Window bounce-back. See Power Windows (page 79). Clock Settings. Pre-set radio stations.

Battery Disposal

E107998

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

## **ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS**

Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, have the alignment of your headlamps checked by an authorized dealer.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Maintenance

Headlamp Aiming Target

E142592

8 feet (2.4 meters)

Center height of lamp to ground

25 feet (7.6 meters)

Horizontal reference line

Vertical Aim Adjustment

Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 ft (7.6 m) away.

Measure the height from the center of your headlamp indicated by a 3mm circle on the lens to the ground and mark an 8 ft (2.4 m) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height. a piece of masking tape works well.

Note: To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting. you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.

Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood. Cover one of the headlamps so no light hits the wall.

E142465

On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line. the headlamp will need to be adjusted.

E250054

Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Use a Phillips #2 screwdriver to turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp.

Repeat steps 3 through 7 to adjust the other headlamp.

Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Maintenance

Horizontal Aim Adjustment

The horizontal aim does not require any adjustment for this vehicle. If a fault occurs. have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

WASHER FLUID CHECK

**WARNING:** If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C). use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. See Capacities and Specifications (page 297).

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol. a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish. wiper blades or washer system.

## FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

### CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES

E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass and press the locking buttons together.

E129990

Rotate and remove the wiper blade.

Attach the new blade to the arm and snap it into place.

Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Maintenance

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield. See *Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades* (page 257).

### CHANGING A BULB

#### Replacing Reverse Lamp Bulbs

Make sure the lighting control is in the off position.

Locate the reverse lamp bulb under the rear bumper of your vehicle. To access the bulb, reach behind the bumper.

Disconnect the electrical sensor from the bulb by pulling it straight off.

E177487

Rotate the bulb counterclockwise and remove it from the reverse lamp assembly.

#### LED Lamps

LED lamps are not serviceable items.

Contact an authorized dealer if they fail.

The following are LED lamps: Headlamps. Rear lamp. Brake lamp. Front fog lamp. Front sidemarker Daytime running lamp.

Central high mounted brake lamp. Front direction indicator. Rear direction indicator lamp. License plate lamp.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Maintenance

**WARNING:** Track Apps is for track use only. Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It is always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage.

Appropriately change the engine oil for racing and other track events: 2.3L: Prior to the track event. drain the engine oil. replace the oil filter and change the engine oil to 5W-50. After the track event. drain the engine oil. replace the oil filter and refill the engine oil with 5W-30. See Capacities and Specifications (page 303). 5.0L: Prior to the track event. drain the engine oil. replace the oil filter and change the engine oil to 5W-30. After the track event. drain the engine oil. replace the oil filter and refill the engine oil with 5W-20. See Capacities and Specifications (page 303).

Regularly check the engine oil level during the event. Maintain the engine oil level at or near the max mark on the engine oil dipstick. See Engine Oil Check (page 237).

## Track Apps

This information display driven feature provides a suite of menu options to record and optimize your track performances.

See General Information (page 90).

Note: Track Apps are for track use only.

Do not use them under any other driving conditions.

Note: You cannot view or clear your results unless your vehicle is at a complete stop with the right arrow on the display menu inactive. If your vehicle does not reach 100 mph (160 km/h) during the track run. your display may not show your selected interval's results.

Note: The pre-collision assist system turns off when using Track Apps or when you switch off your stability control system.

## Acceleration Timer

Displays your vehicle's rate of acceleration for a given speed or distance range.

## Accelerometer

Displays your vehicle's rate of acceleration or deceleration. A dot moves toward the area of acceleration or deceleration.

### LEFT Acceleration or Deceleration

When accelerating or decelerating left, the dot moves to the right on the accelerometer.

### RIGHT Acceleration or Deceleration

When accelerating or decelerating right, the dot moves to the left on the accelerometer.

### Brake Performance

Displays your vehicle's rate of deceleration for a given speed range.

### Exhaust Mode

Gives the driver the ability to choose the vehicle's exhaust mode.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Track Use

Note: The Track Exhaust Mode setting is only for use at tracks and not for use on public roadways. Use of this setting results in increased exterior noise, which may not meet state and local laws and regulations.

It is the obligation of the driver to operate the vehicle in a manner that complies with state and local requirements. Only use the Track Exhaust Mode setting at a competition track or an off-road course where elevated exterior vehicle noise is acceptable.

### Lap Timer

Gives you the ability to record lap times at three separate tracks.

### Launch Control (If Equipped)

Maximizes your vehicle's traction from a standing start.

Use launch control, follow these steps:

Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

Make sure launch control is enabled.

The indicator illuminates in the instrument display when launch control is enabled. See Warning Lamps and Indicators (page 85).

Fully depress the clutch pedal.

Shift the transmission into 1st gear.

Fully depress the accelerator pedal and allow the engine RPM to stabilize.

Release the clutch pedal.

### Line Lock

Line lock is a feature intended for use at tracks only and should not be used on public roadways. Use of this feature may result in significantly increased rear tire wear. It is intended to condition the rear tires to maximize traction prior to track use.

Line lock maintains brake force at the front wheels, allowing the rear wheels to spin with minimal vehicle movement.

This feature is located in the Track Apps menu. Make selections through the 5-way information display control and OK button located on the steering wheel.

### Using Line Lock

There are three line lock stages:

Initiated. Engaged. Off.

#### Initiating Line Lock

The initiation stage verifies that the vehicle is ready for line lock function, and confirms driver intent. Follow the prompts in the information display to initiate line lock.

The following conditions must be met to initialize line lock: The vehicle is on a level surface. The engine is running. The vehicle is traveling less than 25 mph (40 km/h). Selectable drive mode is not in wet mode (if equipped). There are no electronic stability control faults.

If you want to cancel line lock once it is initialized, press the left information display control. Once initiated, line lock is prepared for activation and remains initiated up to 25 mph (40 km/h). If vehicle speed exceeds 25 mph (40 km/h), line lock automatically cancels.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Track Use

#### Engaging Line Lock

Follow the prompts in the information display to engage line lock after it is initialized. To engage, firmly apply the brakes. Then press the OK button. Once engaged, release the brake pedal. The front brakes remain applied and the rear brakes release. At this point, the engagement timer is initiated and shown on the driver information display.

The following conditions must be met to engage line lock: The vehicle is on a level surface. The engine is running. The vehicle is stopped. The parking brake is not applied. The driver door is closed. The transmission is in a forward gear. Selectable drive mode is not in wet mode (if equipped). There are no electronic stability control faults. The steering wheel must be in the straight ahead position.

#### Releasing Line Lock

While line lock is engaged, you can exit (release) the feature using the OK button.

When you press the OK button, line lock releases immediately and normal vehicle function resumes. When line lock engages, a countdown timer shows the remaining time before line lock is released automatically. If you exceed the time limit, or another vehicle condition requires line lock to release, the system safely disengages and normal vehicle function resumes.

Note: If you apply the brake pedal while line lock is engaged, line lock automatically cancels and normal brake function resumes.

#### Start Option

Allows you to select the type of countdown the information display shows before starting an event.

#### Status Screen

Provides the status of your chosen performance-related settings.

#### View/Clear Results

Allows you to view and clear the last and saved results of the Acceleration Timer.

Brake Performance, and All Time Best results.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Track Use

### GENERAL INFORMATION

Your dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

### CLEANING PRODUCTS

#### Materials

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

#### Specification Name

Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover. ZC-42 (U.S. & Canada)

ESR-M5B194-B Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner. ZC-15 (U.S. & Canada)

ESR-M14P4-A Motorcraft Detail Wash. ZC-3-A (U.S. & Canada)

ESR-M14P3-A Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser. ZC-20 (U.S.)

Motorcraft Engine Shampoo. CXC-66-A (Canada)

Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner. ZC-56 (U.S. & Canada)

Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner. CXC-101 (Canada)

WSS-M14P19-A Motorcraft Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant. ZC-32-B2 (U.S.)

WSS-M14P19-A Motorcraft Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid. CXC-37 A/B/D/F (Canada)

Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner.

ZC-54 (U.S. & Canada)

ESR-M14P5-A Motorcraft Premium Glass Cleaner. CXC-100 (Canada)

Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover. ZC-14 (U.S.)

ESR-M14P5-A Motorcraft Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner. ZC-23 (U.S.)

Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner. ZC-37-A (U.S. & Canada)

## **CLEANING THE EXTERIOR**

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo. we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash.

Never use strong household detergents or soap. for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces. Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch. or during strong or direct sunlight.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Vehicle Care

Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting. Immediately remove fuel spillages. bird droppings. insect deposits and road tar.

These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.

We recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover. Remove any exterior accessories. for example antennas. before entering a car wash. When filling with AdBlue. remove any residue on painted surfaces immediately.

Note: Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come in contact with your vehicle. wash the affected area as soon as possible.

### Cleaning the Headlamps

Note: Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives. alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.

Note: Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.

### Exterior Chrome Parts

Apply a high quality-cleaning product to bumpers and other chrome parts.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

We recommend Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner. Do not apply the cleaning product to hot surfaces. Do not leave the cleaning product on chrome surfaces longer than the time

recommended. Using non-recommended cleaners can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

Note: Never use abrasive materials. for example steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.

Note: Do not use chrome cleaner. metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.

#### Exterior Plastic Parts

For routine cleaning we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash. If tar or grease spots are present. we recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

#### Stripes or Graphics (If Equipped)

Hand washing your vehicle is preferred however. pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

Do not use water pressure higher than 2.000 psi (14. 00 kPa). Do not use water hotter than 179°F (82°C). Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern. Keep the nozzle at a 12 in (305 mm) distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.

Note: Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.

#### Underbody

Regularly clean the underside of your vehicle using water. Keep body and door drain holes free of debris or foreign material.

#### Under Hood

For removing black rubber marks from under the hood we recommend Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner or Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Vehicle Care

##### E142528

Position the child restraint in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.

##### E142529

Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.

##### E142530

While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together. route the tongue through the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Make sure that you have not twisted the belt webbing.

E142531

Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.

E142875

To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Child Safety

WAXING

Regular waxing is necessary to protect your car's paint from the elements. We recommend that you wash and wax the painted surface once or twice a year.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight. Always wash your vehicle before applying wax.

Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. Apply a small amount of wax in a back-and-forth motion, not in circles. Do not allow wax to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim. The wax will discolor or stain the parts over time. Roof racks. Bumpers. Grained door handles. Side moldings. Mirror housings. Windshield cowl area. Do not apply wax to glass areas. After waxing, your car's paint should feel smooth, and be free of streaks and smudges.

CLEANING THE ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal.

When washing: Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage. Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components. Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo.

Note: If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser.

Immediately rinse away any over spray.

Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage. Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the

area in and around these locations. Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

## **CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES**

Car wash chemicals and environmental fallout can result in windshield and wiper blade contamination. Dirty windshield and wipers will result in poor windshield wiper operation. Keep the windshield and wiper blades clean to maintain windshield wiper performance.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Vehicle Care

To clean the windshield and wiper blades: Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner. When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately. For windshields contaminated with tree sap, chemicals, wax or bugs, clean the entire windshield using steel wool (no greater than 0000 grade) in a circular motion and rinse with water. Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl rubbing alcohol or windshield washer concentrate.

Note: Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window.

The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

### CLEANING THE INTERIOR

**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents.

Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats and seats equipped with side airbags: Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner. Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner.

If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover. In Canada, use Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner. If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set. Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

### Mirrors

Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

#### CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND INSTRUMENT CLUSTER LENS

**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

**Note:** Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces. See *Cleaning Leather Seats* (page 259).

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Vehicle Care

Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection. Do not use any household cleaning products or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens. Wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces. Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces.

If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately.

Your warranty may not cover these damages.

If a staining liquid like coffee or juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces:

Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, soft cloth as quickly as possible.

Use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors. Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.

Alternatively, wipe the surface with a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, soft cloth and press it onto the soiled area. Allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.

Remove the soaked cloth, then with a clean, damp cloth, use a rubbing motion for 60 seconds on the soiled area.

Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## **CLEANING LEATHER SEATS (IF**

**EQUIPPED)**

Note: Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For cleaning and removing stains such as dye transfer, use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

Note: Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.

You should: Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner. Clean and treat spills and stains as soon as possible.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather: Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners. Household cleaners. Alcohol solutions. Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Vehicle Care

## **REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE**

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take your color code to your authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner such as Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Always read the instructions before using cleaning products.

**CLEANING THE WHEELS (IF**

**EQUIPPED)**

Regularly clean them with a wheel cleaner. We recommend that you use Ford approved wheel cleaner if available.

Remove dirt and brake dust with a sponge.

Remove tar and grease with a bug and tar remover. We recommend that you use Ford approved bug and tar remover if available.

Thoroughly rinse the wheels with water after cleaning.

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

Note: Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.

Note: Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.

## **VEHICLE STORAGE**

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all motor vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve engine components.

### **General**

Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place. Protect from sunlight, if possible. If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

### **Body**

Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders. Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations. Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust. Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle. Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### **Vehicle Care**

Cover interior trim to prevent fading. Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

### **Engine**

Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which may cause engine damage. Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature. With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running. We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.

## Fuel system

Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

## Cooling system

Protect against freezing temperatures. When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level.

Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

## Disconnecting Your 12 Volt Battery

Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean. If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, we recommend that you disconnect the battery cables to maintain battery charge for quick starting.

Note: It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.

## Plugging in Your HYBRID

We recommend the following options for your plug-in vehicle (PHEV) : Leave your vehicle plugged in. The 12 volt battery maintains power if left plugged in. However, this periodically uses electricity from the household outlet. Connect a battery charger to your 12 volt battery and leave it on a continuous, slow charge. Disconnect the 12 volt battery. If your 12 volt battery is located in the luggage compartment, do not fully shut the luggage compartment after disconnecting the 12 volt battery. Only leave the luggage compartment open if your vehicle is stored in a locked location.

## Brakes

Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

## Tires

Maintain recommended air pressure.

## Miscellaneous

Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust. Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Vehicle Care

### Removing Vehicle From Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following: Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces. Check windshield wipers for any deterioration. Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage such as mice or squirrel nests. Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during

storage. Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label. Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 15 ft (4.5 m) back and forth to remove rust build-up. Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels. If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

#### CLEANING THE CONVERTIBLE TOP (IF EQUIPPED)

Remove lint with a lint roller or a vacuum with a soft bristle brush.

For cloth and vinyl tops, wash with an approved high-quality convertible top cleaner and protectant.

Note: Do not use stiff bristle brushes, abrasive materials or household cleaning products.

Note: High-pressure water may cause water leaks and possible seal damage to the convertible top.

Note: Do not fold the convertible top when it is wet.

Note: Avoid hot wax on vinyl materials during car washes.

## BODY STYLING KITS

The distance between the underside of your vehicle and the ground is less than that of other models. Drive with extreme care to avoid damage to your vehicle.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Vehicle Care

#### GENERAL INFORMATION

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold.

Note: Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.

Only use approved wheel and tire sizes.

Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and could make the National Type Approval invalid.

Installation of any tires that are not the original equipment tire size can cause the speedometer to display incorrect vehicle speed.

#### TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT (IF EQUIPPED)

Note: The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See your authorized dealer for replacement sealant canisters.

The kit is under the load floor in the cargo area. The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures caused by nails or similar objects. This kit provides a temporary tire repair, allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 120 mi (200 km) at a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) to reach a tire service location.

E175977

Air compressor (inside).

Selector switch.

On and off button.

Air pressure gauge.

Sealant bottle and canister.

Dual purpose hose: air and repair.

Tire valve connector.

Accessory power plug.

Casing/housing.

Bike/raft/sports ball adapters.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Wheels and Tires

General Information

**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

**Note:** Do not use the kit if you have severely damaged a tire. Only seal punctures within the tire tread with the kit.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6 millimeters) or damage to the tire's sidewall. The tire may not completely seal.

Loss of air pressure may adversely affect tire performance. For this reason:

**Note:** Do not drive the vehicle above 50 mph (80 km/h).

**Note:** Do not drive further than 120 mi (200 km). Drive only to the closest authorized dealer or tire repair shop to have your tire inspected.

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt steering maneuvers. Periodically monitor tire inflation pressure in the affected tire; if the tire is losing pressure, have the vehicle towed. Read the information in the Tips for Use of the Kit section to make sure safe operation of the kit and your vehicle.

Tips for Use of the Kit

To ensure safe operation of the kit:

Read all instructions and cautions fully. Before operating the kit, make sure your vehicle is safely off the road and away from moving traffic. Switch on the hazard lights. Always set the parking brake to ensure the vehicle does not move unexpectedly.

Do not remove any foreign objects, such as nails or screws, from the tire. When using the kit, leave the engine running (only if the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area) so the compressor does not drain the vehicle's battery. Do not allow the compressor to operate continuously for more than 15 minutes. This will help prevent the compressor from overheating. Never leave the kit unattended during operation. Sealant compound contains latex.

Those with latex sensitivities should use appropriate precautions to avoid an allergic reaction. Keep the kit away from children. Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -22°F (-30°C) and 158°F (70°C). Only use the sealing compound before the use-by date. The use-by date is on a label on the sealant canister, which you can see through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the compressor. Check the use-by date regularly and replace the canister when the sealant expires. Do not store the kit unsecured inside the passenger compartment of the vehicle as it may cause injury during a sudden stop or crash. Always store the kit in its original location. After sealant use, an authorized dealer must replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel. Operating the kit could cause an electrical disturbance in radio, CD and DVD player operation.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Wheels and Tires

E175978

+ When inflation only is required for a tire or other objects, the selector must be in the Air position.

What to do When a Tire Is Punctured

You can repair a tire puncture within the tire's tread area in two stages with the kit.

In the first stage, inflate the tire with a sealing compound and air. After you inflate the tire, you will need to drive the vehicle a short distance 4 mi (6 km) to distribute the sealant in the tire. In the second stage, check the tire pressure and adjust, if necessary, to the vehicle's specified tire inflation pressure.

First Stage: Inflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air

**WARNING:** Do not stand directly over the kit while inflating the tire. If you notice any unusual bulges or deformations in the tire's sidewall during inflation, stop and call roadside assistance.

**WARNING:** If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

**WARNING:** Do not run the engine when operating the air compressor unless the vehicle is outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.

Preparation: Park the vehicle in a safe, level and secure area, away from moving traffic.

Switch the hazard lights on. Apply the parking brake and switch the engine off.

Inspect the flat tire for visible damage.

Sealant compound contains latex. Use appropriate precautions to avoid any allergic reactions.

Do not remove any foreign object that has pierced the tire. If a puncture is in the tire sidewall, stop and call roadside assistance.

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.

Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the back of the compressor housing.

Fasten the hose to the tire valve by turning the connector clockwise.

Tighten the connection securely.

E200523

Plug the power cable into the 12-volt power point in the vehicle.

Remove the warning sticker found on the casing/housing and place it on the top of the instrument panel or the center of the dash.

Start the vehicle and leave the engine running so the compressor does not drain the vehicle's battery.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Wheels and Tires

E175981

Turn dial (A) clockwise to the sealant position. Switch the kit on by pressing the on/off button (B).

Inflate the tire to the pressure listed on the tire label on the driver's door or the door jamb area. The initial air pressure gauge reading may indicate a value higher than the label pressure while you pump the sealing compound into the tire. This is normal and should be no reason for concern. The pressure gauge reading will indicate the tire inflation pressure after about 30 seconds of operation. You should check the final tire pressure with the compressor turned OFF in order to get an accurate pressure reading.

E175982

When the tire reaches the recommended tire pressure, switch off the kit, unplug the power cable, and disconnect the hose from the tire valve.

Re-install the valve cap on the tire valve and return the kit to the stowage area.

Immediately and cautiously, drive the vehicle 4 mi (6 km) to distribute the sealant evenly inside the tire. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

After 4 mi (6 km), stop and check the tire pressure. See Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Wheels and Tires

Note: The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode.

You should not be able to pull more belt out. If the retractor does not lock, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.

### E142533

Remove remaining slack from the belt.

Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that exists once you add the extra weight of the child to the child restraint.

It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child restraint to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.

If the child restraint has a tether strap, attach it.

### E142534

Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 in (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.

We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with Transport Canada for referral to a Child Car Seat Clinic.

## Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)

**WARNING:** Do not attach two child safety restraints to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety restraint attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Child Safety

Note: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance. Note: Do not proceed to the second stage of this operation.

## Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure

Note: If you are proceeding from the First Stage: Re-inflating the Tire with Sealing Compound and Air section and have injected sealant in the tire and the pressure is below 20 psi (1.4 bar), continue to the next step.

**WARNING:** The power plug may get hot after use and should be handled carefully when unplugging.

Check the air pressure of your tires as follows:

E175983

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve.

Firmly screw the air compressor hose onto the valve stem by turning clockwise.

Push and turn the dial clockwise to the air position.

If required, switch on the compressor and adjust the tire to the recommended inflation pressure shown on the tire label on the driver's door or door jamb area. You should check the tire pressure with the compressor turned OFF in order to get an accurate pressure reading.

Unplug the hoses, re-install the valve cap on the tire and return the kit to the stowage area.

## What to Do After the Tire Has Been Sealed

After using the kit to seal your tire, you will need to replace the sealant canister. You can obtain sealant canisters and spare parts at an authorized dealer. You can dispose of empty sealant canisters at home. However, you should dispose of canisters still containing liquid sealant through your local authorized dealer or tire dealer, or in accordance with local waste disposal regulation.

Note: After you use the sealing compound, the maximum vehicle speed is 50 mph (80 km/h) and the maximum driving distance is 120 mi (200 km). You should inspect the sealed tire immediately.

You can check the tire pressure any time within the 120 mi (200 km) by performing the steps listed previously in the Second Stage: Checking Tire Pressure procedure.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Wheels and Tires

Removal of the sealant canister from the kit

E175984

Unwrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) from the compressor housing.

E175985

Unwrap the power cord.

E175986

Remove the back cover.

E175987

Rotate the sealant canister up 90 degrees and pull away from casing/housing to remove.

Installation of the sealant canister to the kit

With the canister held perpendicular to the housing, insert the canister nozzle into the connector and push until seated.

Rotate the canister 90 degrees down into the housing/casing.

E175988

Snap the back cover back into place.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Wheels and Tires

E175989

Wrap the dual purpose hose (black tube) around the channel on the bottom of the housing/casing.

E175990

Wrap the power cord around the housing and stow the accessory power plug into its storage area.

Note: If you experience any difficulties with the removal or installation of the sealant canister, consult an authorized dealer for assistance.

Make sure you check the sealant compound's use-by date regularly. The use-by date is on a label on the sealant canister, which you can see through the rectangular viewing window on the bottom of the kit. Replace the sealant canister when the sealant expires.

## **TIRE CARE**

Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading

E142542

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires.

The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A.

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires.

They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 (c)(2).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Wheels and Tires

U.S. Department of Transportation Tire quality grades: The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1 ½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction AA A B C

WARNING: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

### Temperature A B C

WARNING: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Wheels and Tires

Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

### Glossary of Tire Terminology

+Tire label: A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

+Tire Identification Number (TIN): A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

+Inflation pressure: A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

+Standard load: A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 35 psi (2.4 bar) and for Metric tires 36 psi (2.5 bar).

Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire capability.

+Extra load: A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (2.9 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

+kPa: Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

+PSI: Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

+Cold tire pressure: The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mi (1.6 km).

+Recommended inflation pressure: The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

+ B-pillar: The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

+Bead area of the tire: Area of the tire next to the rim.

+ Sidewall of the tire: Area between the bead area and the tread.

+Tread area of the tire: Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

+Rim: The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Wheels and Tires

### Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

### Information on P Type Tires

E142543

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. P: Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. Note: If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. 215: Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. 65: Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. 15: Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. 95: Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry.

You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Wheels and Tires

G. H: Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation

pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Speed rating - mph (km/h) Letter rating

81 (130)

87 (140)

99 (159)

106 (171)

112 (180)

118 (190)

124 (200)

130 (210)

149 (240)

Speed rating - mph (km/h) Letter rating

168 (270)

186 (299) Note: For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

H. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN): This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured. The next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. M+S or M/S: Mud and Snow. or AT: All Terrain. or AS: All Season.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Wheels and Tires

J. Tire Ply Composition and Material Used: Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K. Maximum Load: Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:

+Treadwear: The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

+Traction: The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A,

B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

+Temperature: The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

M. Maximum Inflation Pressure: Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Wheels and Tires

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

Note: Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

E142544

LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

A. LT: Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. Load Range and Load Inflation Limits: Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

C. Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold: Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual. defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold: Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single. defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

#### Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Wheels and Tires

E142545

T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below: A. T: Indicates a type of tire. designated by the Tire and Rim Association. that is intended for temporary service on cars. sport utility vehicles. minivans and light trucks.

B. 145: Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general. the larger the number. the wider the tire.

C. 80: Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. D: Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. 16: Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size. you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

#### Location of the Tire Label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

#### Inflating Your Tires

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive. check your tires. If one looks lower than the others. use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Wheels and Tires

**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

**WARNING:** The center of the rear seat is not designed as a seating position and is not equipped with seatbelts. The LATCH anchors were not designed to be used with a child restraint in the center position and there is no tether anchor available at the center. Do not attempt to use the center as a seating position as this will increase the risk of injury or death in the event of a crash.

The LATCH system has three vehicle anchor points: two lower anchors where the seat backrest and seat cushion meet (called the seat bight) and one top tether anchor behind that seating position.

LATCH compatible child restraints have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use seatbelts to attach the child restraint. However, you can still use the seatbelt to attach the child restraint. For forward-facing child restraints, you must also attach the top tether strap to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child restraint.

E316614

Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child restraint installation at the seating positions marked with the child restraint symbol.

E187773

The LATCH anchors are at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seat backrest below the symbols as shown. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child restraint with LATCH attachments. Follow the instructions on attaching child restraints with tether straps.

Only attach LATCH lower attachments of the child restraint to the anchors shown.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Child Safety

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear.

Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label

(affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Maximum Inflation Pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Wheels and Tires

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 43°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure.

Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s): 1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

Note: If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, for example, driven more than 1 mi (1.6 km), never bleed or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for

pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.

Note: If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.

3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

Note: If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

4. Replace the valve cap.

5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

Note: Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T type mini-spare tires, see the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires, see the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Wheels and Tires

### Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem.

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced.

For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

#### Tire Wear

E142546

When the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

#### Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Wheels and Tires

**WARNING:** Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

**WARNING:** In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear.

However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

**WARNING:** You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

#### U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits.

For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

### Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Wheels and Tires

**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels, then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

**WARNING:** For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

**WARNING:** Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

**WARNING:** When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Wheels and Tires

Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly. Use both eye and ear protection.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

### Safety Practices

**WARNING:** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 34 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

+Observe posted speed limits.

+Avoid fast starts, stops and turns.

+Avoid potholes and objects on the road.

+Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking.

### Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic.

This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Wheels and Tires

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

### Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

#### Tire Rotation

Note: If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

Note: Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

Note: After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the Scheduled Maintenance chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life. Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

Rear-wheel drive vehicles (front tires on the left side of the diagram).

#### Non-directional tires

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Wheels and Tires

E142548

Vehicles equipped with different size tires on the front and rear axle

E209823

#### USING SUMMER TIRES

Summer tires provide superior performance on wet and dry roads.

Summer tires do not have the Mud and Snow (M+S or M/S) tire traction rating on the tire side wall. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as All-season or Snow tires, we do not recommend using summer tires when temperatures drop to about 45°F (7°C) or below (depending on tire wear and environmental conditions) or in snow and

Always store your summer tires indoors at temperatures above 19°F (-7°C). The rubber compounds used in these tires lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below 19°F (-7°C). If the tires have been subjected to 19°F (-7°C) or less, warm them in a heated space to at least 41°F (5°C) for at least 24 hours before installing them on a vehicle, or moving the vehicle with the tires installed, or checking tire inflation. Do not place tires near heaters or heating devices used to warm the room where the tires are stored. Do not apply heat or blow heated air directly on the tires.

Always inspect the tires after storage periods and before use.

## USING WINTER TIRES

E278852

We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 45°F (7°C) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Wheels and Tires

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See Technical Specifications (page 295).

**WARNING:** Snow tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure.

Follow the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door latch post or the door edge that meets the door latch post, next to the driver seat), or Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

### USING SNOW CHAINS

**WARNING:** Aggressive driving in any road conditions can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of severe personal injury or property damage. The traction control activating is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this may lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If you experience a severe road event, slow down.

The tires on your vehicle could have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. In some climates you will need to use snow tires and chains on your vehicle in emergency situations or if required by law.

Note: The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage.

Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

When possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle. Chains could damage aluminum wheels. Use ultra low profile cables, 10 mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire, with 235/55R 17.

235/50R18 and 255/40R19 on the rear axle only. Do not use snow chains or cables with 265/40R19, 275/40R19 and 265/35R20 tires. Not all S-class snow chains or cables meet these restrictions. Chains of this size restriction will include a tensioning device. Purchase chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions. The snow chains or cables must be mounted in pairs on the front or the rear tires only. Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h) if recommended by the chain manufacturer while using snow chains. Install cables securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Wheels and Tires

Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent vehicle damage. Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire chains on dry roads.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, please contact your authorized dealer.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Note: You should only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they could cause damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensor.

Note: If the tire pressure monitoring system sensor becomes damaged, it will not function.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure.

Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and could affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system will not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions could occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Wheels and Tires

### Combining Seatbelt and LATCH Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Restraints

When used in combination, you can attach either the seatbelt or the LATCH lower anchors first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child restraint.

### Using Tether Straps

Many forward-facing child restraints include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child restraint and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older child restraints.

Contact the manufacturer of your child restraint for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your child restraint does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.

Once you install the child restraint using either the seatbelt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

E316620

Perform the following steps to install a child restraint with tether anchors:

For coupe:

Note: If you install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child restraint off your vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child restraint.

Keeping the child restraint just touching your vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.

Route the tether strap over the top of the seat backrest.

E174400

Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Child Safety

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with License exempt RSS Standards of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

This device will not cause harmful interference, and

This device must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System

E142549

Note: Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is

covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See *When Inflating Your Tires* in this chapter.

## Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System

E250820

The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. You can view the tire pressure readings through the information display.

See *General Information* (page 90). The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

### When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire assembly needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Wheels and Tires

To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

### When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

Customer action required Possible cause Low tire pressure warning light

Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.

Tire(s) under-inflated

Solid warning light Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed in this section.

Spare tire in use

If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

TPMS malfunction

Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed in this section.

Spare tire in use

Flashing warning light

If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

TPMS malfunction

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Wheels and Tires

When Inflating Your Tires

**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system will not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It could take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure could increase about 2–4 psi (14–28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure could decrease about 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30°F (17°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value could be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.

Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

## **CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL (IF**

**EQUIPPED)**

**WARNING:** If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

**Note:** You should only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they may cause damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensor.

**Note:** The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

If you get a flat tire when driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors.

See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 286). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the tire pressure monitoring system sensor for damage.

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Wheels and Tires

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. T-type mini-spare: This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

2. Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel: This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, do not:

Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h). Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label. Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire. Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time. Use commercial car washing equipment. Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following: Handling, stability and braking performance. Comfort and noise.

Ground clearance and parking at curbs. Winter weather driving capability. Wet weather driving capability. All-wheel driving capability.

3. Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not: Exceed 75 mph (120 km/h). Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time. Use commercial car washing equipment. Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following: Handling, stability and braking performance. Comfort and noise. Ground clearance and parking at curbs. Winter weather driving capability. Wet weather driving capability. All-wheel driving capability.

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly additional caution should be given to: Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Wheels and Tires

Tire Change Procedure

**WARNING:** To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, shift the transmission into park (P), set the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

**WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is only supported by a vehicle jack.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

**WARNING:** Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle.

**WARNING:** Always use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If using a jack other than the one provided, make sure the jack capacity is adequate for the vehicle weight, including any vehicle cargo or modifications. If you are unsure if the jack capacity is adequate, contact the authorized dealer.

**WARNING:** Check that the vehicle jack is not damaged or deformed and the thread is lubricated and clean.

**WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing wheels. Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency.

**WARNING:** Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.

**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

**WARNING:** Do not work on your vehicle when the jack is the only support as your vehicle could slip off the jack.

Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

E166722

**Note:** No maintenance or additional lubrication of your jack is required over the service life of your vehicle.

Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Wheels and Tires

Place the transmission in park (P) and turn the engine off. For vehicles with a manual transmission, place the transmission in reverse (R) after the engine is turned off.

E175447

Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire.

For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.

E174938

Remove the lug wrench, spare tire and jack.

Remove the center ornament from the wheel if required to access the lug nuts.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Wheels and Tires

E175694

To remove the wrench from the jack, turn the hex nut on the jack counterclockwise. This lowers the jack and loosens the mechanical lock.

Unfold the wrench for use.

E181744

Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

E176084

Note: Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

The vehicle jacking points are shown here, and can be identified by the triangle markings on the vehicle. Details are depicted on the warning label on the jack.

E174939

Place the jack at the jacking point next to the tire you are changing. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground.

Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered. If you are using the temporary tire, the lug nut washers do not appear to be flush with the rim. This is normal only when using the temporary spare tire.

Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Wheels and Tires

E306781

Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See Technical Specifications (page 295).

To store the folded wrench on the jack. engage the bracket of the jack base on the wrench feature as shown.

Swing the wrench upwards and adjust the height of the jack until the pin engages the hole. Tighten the hex nut clockwise by hand until secure.

E176165

Put the flat tire. wheel ornament. jack and lug wrench away. Make sure the jack is fastened so it does not rattle when you drive.

Unblock the wheel.

## **DRIVING AT HIGH SPEED**

Tire pressure - Speeds greater than 100 mph (160 km/h)

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Wheels and Tires

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of potential tire failure that could lead to serious injury or death. increase the front and rear tire placard pressures by the amount shown on the warning label. located on either the driver side B-pillar or door. when driving over 100 mph (160 km/h). Only travel at speeds over 100 mph (160 km/h) where it is legal and conditions allow. The tire placard pressure can be found on the tire placard located on either the driver side B-pillar or door of your vehicle.

E176077

**Warning:** Failure to follow these instructions can result in a loss of vehicle stability due to tire failure that could lead to serious injury or death. If you are not sure about the proper tire inflation pressures. contact an authorized dealer or service center.

E184089

Your tires may require additional inflation pressure for operation at speeds greater than 100 mph (160 km/h). If this label is present on your vehicle. you must adjust the tire pressure accordingly.

## **TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS**

Wheel Lug Nut Torque Specifications

**WARNING:** When you install a wheel. always remove any corrosion. dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub. brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen

and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

lb-ft (Nm) Bolt size

## **150 (204) M14 X 1.5**

1 Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 kilometers) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Wheels and Tires

E145950

Wheel pilot bore

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation.

Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Wheels and Tires

Open the tether anchor cover.

E174401

Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.

Tighten the child restraint tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions. If your child restraint system has a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, we also recommend its use.

If you have not properly anchored the child restraint, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

For vehicles with a convertible top:

Note: For easier access, attach the tether with the convertible top up.

Route the child restraint tether strap over the top of the seat backrest.

E185416

Access the tether anchors behind the seat backrest.

Remove the tether anchor cap.

Clip the tether strap to the anchor.

Tighten the child restraint tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If you have not properly anchored the child restraint, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

If your child restraint system has a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, we also recommend its use.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Child Safety

## **BOOSTER SEATS**

**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety restraint (generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age 4 and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:

E142595

Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat backrest with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion? Can the child sit without slouching?

Does the lap belt rest low across the hips? Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest? Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

Types of Booster Seats

E68924

Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat backrest or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the

backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat backrest or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts. or consider using a high back booster seat.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Child Safety

E70710

#### High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The following drawings compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.

E142596

E142597

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Child Safety

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat.

Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

#### CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING

**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible.

Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height.

weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions

**WARNING:** Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

**WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Properly secure child restraints or booster seats when they are not in use. They could become projectiles in a sudden stop or crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle.

Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Child Safety

### Recommendations for Attaching Child Safety Restraints for Children

Use Any Attachment Method as Indicated Below by X

Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint

Restraint Type

Seatbelt Only    Seatbelt and LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)

Seatbelt and Top Tether Anchor

LATCH (Lower Anchors Only)

LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)

Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)

Rear facing child restraint

Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)

Rear facing child restraint

Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)

Forward facing child restraint

Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)

## Forward facing child restraint

Note: The child restraint must rest tightly against the vehicle seat upon which it is installed. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See Seats (page 118).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Child Safety

### PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

**WARNING:** Children must always be properly restrained.

**WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash.

**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.

**WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific seatbelt assembly made up of one buckle and one tongue designed to be used as a pair.

Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. Never use a single seatbelt for more than one person.

**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Properly restrain children 12 and under in the rear seat whenever possible.

**WARNING:** Seatbelts and seats may be hot in a vehicle that is in the sunshine. The hot seatbelts or seats may burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

**WARNING:** The center of the rear seat is not designed as a seating position and is not equipped with seatbelts. The LATCH anchors were not designed to be used with a child restraint in the center position and there is no tether anchor available at the center. Do not attempt to use the center as a seating position as this will increase the risk of injury or death in the event of a crash.

All seating positions in your vehicle have lap and shoulder seatbelts. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The seatbelt system consists of: Lap and shoulder seatbelts. Seatbelt pretensioner at the front outboard seating positions. Belt tension sensor at the front outboard passenger seating position.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Seatbelts

E71880

- Seatbelt warning light and chime.

E67017

- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

The seatbelt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners may also activate in side impacts and rollovers.

## FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

The front outboard and rear safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.

A web guide is included on the outboard side of the front seats. Depending on occupant size and seating position, you may need to route the belt through the guide for a proper fit. If the seatbelt does not route across the middle of the shoulder, route the belt through the web guide.

## Convertible

E175860

## Coupe

E175859

## Recaro

E175163

## Recaro SVT

E216814

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Seatbelts

E204921

E142587

Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch.

Make sure you securely fasten the tongue in the buckle.

E142588

To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.

#### Using Seatbelts During Pregnancy

**WARNING:** Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and properly fasten your seatbelt. Fit the lap portion of the seatbelt snugly and low across the hips. Position the shoulder portion of the seatbelt across your chest. Pregnant women must follow this practice. See the following figure.

E142590

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Seatbelts

Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. Position the lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort allows. Position the shoulder belt to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

#### Seatbelt Locking Modes

**WARNING:** If your vehicle is involved in a crash, have the seatbelts and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts and have vehicle sensitive locking mode. In addition, the front outboard passenger and rear seat seatbelts have the automatic locking mode.

#### Vehicle Sensitive Mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement.

For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination seatbelts lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if you pull the webbing out too quickly. If the seatbelt retractor locks, slowly lower the height adjuster to allow the seatbelt to retract. If the retractor does not unlock, pull the seatbelt out slowly then feed a

#### Automatic Locking Mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt automatically pre-locks. The belt still retracts to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver seatbelt.

#### When to Use the Automatic Locking Mode

Use this mode any time a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible.

See Child Safety (page 20).

#### How to Disengage the Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

### SEATBELT WARNING LAMP AND INDICATOR CHIME

#### E71880

This lamp illuminates and an indicator chime will sound if the driver seatbelt has not been fastened when the vehicle's ignition is turned on.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Seatbelts

##### Conditions of operation

##### Then If

The seatbelt warning lamp illuminates and the indicator chime sounds for a few seconds.

The driver seatbelt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position

The seatbelt warning lamp and indicator chime turn off.

The driver seatbelt is buckled while the warning lamp is illuminated and the indicator chime is sounding

The seatbelt warning lamp and indicator chime remain off.

The driver seatbelt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position

## SEATBELT REMINDER

#### Belt-Minder

This feature supplements the seatbelt warning function by providing additional reminders that intermittently sound a tone and illuminate the seatbelt warning light when you are in the driver seat or you have a front seat passenger and a seatbelt is unbuckled.

The system uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the Belt-Minder feature for objects you place in the front passenger seat, only the front seat passengers receive warnings as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

If the Belt-Minder warnings expire (warnings for about five minutes) for one passenger (driver or front passenger), the other passenger can still cause the Belt-Minder feature to turn on.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Seatbelts

Then If

The Belt-Minder feature will not activate.

You and the front seat passenger buckle your seatbelts before you switch the ignition on or less than 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on

The Belt-Minder feature activates, the seatbelt warning light illuminates and a warning tone sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your seatbelts.

You or the front seat passenger do not buckle your seatbelts before your vehicle reaches at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on

The Belt-Minder feature activates, the seatbelt warning light illuminates and a warning tone sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your seatbelts.

The seatbelt for the driver or front passenger is unbuckled for about 1 minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and more than 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on

Deactivating and Activating the Belt-Minder Feature

**WARNING:** While the system allows you to deactivate it, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle.

Note: The driver and front passenger warnings switch on and off independently.

When you perform this procedure for one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.

Note: If you are using MyKey, you cannot disable the Belt-Minder. Also, if you have previously disabled the Belt-Minder, it will be re-enabled during the use of MyKey.

Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Before following the procedure, make sure that: You set the parking brake. You put the transmission in park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (N) (manual transmission). You switch the ignition off. You unbuckle the driver and front passenger seatbelts.

Switch the ignition on. Do not start the vehicle.

Wait until the seatbelt warning light turns off (about one minute). After Step 2, wait an additional 5 seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once you start Step 3, you must complete the procedure within 30 seconds.

For the seating position you are switching off, buckle then unbuckle the seatbelt three times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state.

After Step 3, the seatbelt warning light turns on.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Seatbelts

While the seatbelt warning light is on, buckle and then unbuckle the seatbelt.

After Step 4, the seatbelt warning light flashes for confirmation. This will switch the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on. This will switch the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

## CHILD RESTRAINT AND SEATBELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle seatbelts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child restraint seatbelts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle seatbelt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front seatbelt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat backrest (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a crash. Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

We recommend that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for seatbelts. See Vehicle Care (page 255).

## SEATBELT EXTENSIONS

**WARNING:** Persons who fit into the vehicle's seatbelt should not use an extension. Unnecessary use could result in serious personal injury in the event of a crash.

WARNING: Only use extensions provided free of charge by our dealers.

The dealer will provide an extension designed specifically for this vehicle. model year and seating position. The use of an extension intended for another vehicle. model year or seating position may not offer you the full protection of your vehicle's seatbelt restraint system.

WARNING: Never use seatbelt extensions to install child restraints.

WARNING: Do not use a seatbelt extension with an inflatable seatbelt.

WARNING: Do not use extensions to change the way the seatbelt fits across the torso. over the lap or to make the seatbelt buckle easier to reach.

If, because of body size or driving position, it is not possible to properly fasten the seatbelt over your lap and shoulder, an extension that is compatible with the seatbelts is available free of charge from our dealers. Only use our seatbelt extensions made by the original equipment seatbelt manufacturer with our seatbelts.

Ask your authorized dealer if your extension is compatible with your vehicle restraint system.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Seatbelts

The Personal Safety System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

The Vehicle Personal Safety System consists of: Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints. Front seat outermost seatbelts with pretensioners, energy management retractors and seatbelt usage sensors. Driver seat position sensor. Passenger seat position sensor. Front passenger sensing system. Passenger airbag off and on indicators. Front crash severity sensors. Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors. Restraint system warning lamp and tone. The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensors, seatbelt pretensioners, front seatbelt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system and indicators.

### How Does the Personal Safety System Work?

The Personal Safety System can adapt the deployment strategy of the safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the restraints control module. During a crash, the restraints control module may deploy the seatbelt pretensioners, one or both stages of the dual-stage airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Personal Safety System

#### PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

**WARNING:** Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.

**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

**WARNING:** Even with advanced restraints systems, properly restrain children 12 and under in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not place your arms on the airbag cover or through the steering wheel. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment or in a sudden stop. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child restraint is installed all the way back.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. To reduce the risk of injury, do not touch them after inflation.

**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the seatbelts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

**Note:** You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Supplementary Restraints System

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag.

Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment.

Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

### DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS

**WARNING:** Do not place your arms on the airbag cover or through the steering wheel. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment or in a sudden stop. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child restraint is installed all the way back.

E151127

The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of: Driver and passenger airbag modules. Front passenger sensing system.

E67017

· Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

See Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator (page 48).

### Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment

**WARNING:** National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag: Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably. Recline the seat slightly (one or two degrees) from the upright position.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Supplementary Restraints System

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seatback, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

### Children and Airbags

**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child restraint. Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child restraint is installed all the way back.

E142846

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

## **FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM**

**WARNING:** Even with advanced restraints systems, properly restrain children 12 and under in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

**WARNING:** Do not stow objects in the seatback map pocket or hang objects off a seatback if a child is in the front passenger seat. Do not place objects under the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console. Check the passenger airbag indicator lamp for proper airbag status.

Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system and increase the risk of serious injury.

**WARNING:** Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Supplementary Restraints System

E253573

The front passenger sensing system uses a passenger airbag status indicator that illuminates indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either on (enabled) or off (disabled).

The indicator lamp is on the overhead console.

Note: The passenger airbag status indicator lamps illuminate for a short period of time when you first switch the ignition on to confirm it is functional.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag when the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected. Even with this technology, parents are strongly encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat.

When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the off lamp and stays lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled. If you install the child restraint and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp, switch the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp and remains illuminated.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the airbag off indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens: Switch the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seat backrest in an upright position. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This allows the system to detect that person and enables (may inflate) the passenger frontal airbag. If the indicator off lamp remains lit even after this, advise the person to ride in the rear seat.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Supplementary Restraints System

### Passenger Airbag Passenger Airbag Status Indicator Occupant

Disabled OFF: Lit Empty

ON: Unlit

Disabled OFF: Lit Child

ON: Unlit

Enabled OFF: Unlit Adult

ON: Lit

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat backrest, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

Objects lodged underneath the seat. Objects between the seat cushion and the center console. Objects hanging off the seat backrest. Objects stowed in the seat backrest map pocket. Objects placed on the occupant's lap. Cargo interference with the seat. Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat. Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.

E67017

Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See *Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator* (page 48).

If the airbag readiness light is lit, do the following:

The driver and adult passengers should check for objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat, or cargo interfering with the seat.

If there are lodged objects, or cargo is interfering with the seat, take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

Pull the vehicle over. Switch the vehicle off. Driver and adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat. Remove the obstruction(s) (if found). Restart the vehicle.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Supplementary Restraints System

Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light is no longer illuminated. If the airbag readiness light remains illuminated, this may or may not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center. See Getting the Services You Need (page 214).

### SIDE AIRBAGS

**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The side airbags are on the outermost side of the seat backrests of the front seats. In certain sideways crashes, the side airbags will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact crashes.

### Coupe

E152533

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Supplementary Restraints System

#### Convertible

E174777

The system consists of the following: A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle. Side airbags inside the driver and front passenger seat backrests.

E67017

·Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

See Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator (page 48).

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

## **DRIVER AND PASSENGER KNEE AIRBAGS**

**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.

**WARNING:** Close the glove box door when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the passenger knee airbag and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

A driver knee airbag is located under or within the instrument panel. A passenger knee airbag is located within or under the glove box door. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the driver and passenger knee airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the driver and passenger knee airbag may deploy but the driver front airbag may not activate. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

E67017

Make sure the knee airbags are operating properly. See Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator (page 48).

## **SAFETY CANOPY - COUPE**

**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Supplementary Restraints System

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

WARNING: To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The Safety Canopy deploys during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.

E75004

The system consists of the following: Safety Canopy curtain airbags above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim. A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment

E67017

· Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator. See Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator (page 48).

Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

The design and development of the Safety Canopy included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Supplementary Restraints System

## CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR

**WARNING:** Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of your vehicle (including hood, bumper system, frame, front end body structure, tow hooks and hood pins) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify or add equipment to the front end of your vehicle.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors which provide information to the restraints control module. The restraints control module deploys (activates) the front seatbelt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, knee airbag(s), seat mounted side airbags and Safety Canopy airbags. Based on the type of crash, the restraints control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

E67017

The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after you switch the ignition on.

The readiness light either flashes or stays lit. You will hear a series of five beeps. The tone pattern repeats periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The seatbelt pretensioners and the front airbag supplemental restraint system are designed to activate when the vehicle sustains frontal deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device.

The fact that the seatbelt pretensioners or front airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices. The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration). The design of the seatbelt pretensioners is to activate in frontal, near-frontal, side crashes and rollovers.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Supplementary Restraints System

The knee airbag(s) may deploy based on crash severity and occupant conditions. The design of the side airbags is to inflate in certain side crashes. The design of the Safety Canopy is to inflate in certain side impact crashes and when a certain likelihood of rollover is detected by the rollover sensor. Side airbags and Safety Canopy airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.

#### AIRBAG DISPOSAL

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Supplementary Restraints System

## GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s).

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference. and (2) This device must accept any interference received. including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 ft (10 m).

Vehicles with the remote start feature will have a greater range.

One of the following could cause a decrease in operating range: Weather conditions. Nearby radio towers. Structures around the vehicle. Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters. for example amateur radios. medical equipment. wireless headphones. wireless remote controls. cell phones. battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed. you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: Make sure to lock your vehicle before leaving it unattended.

Note: If you are in range. the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.

Note: The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

Intelligent Access (If Equipped)

The system uses a radio frequency signal to communicate with your vehicle and authorize your vehicle to unlock when one of the following conditions are met: You activate the front exterior door handle switch. You press the luggage compartment button. You press a button on the transmitter.

If excessive radio frequency interference is present in the area or if the transmitter battery is low, you may need to mechanically unlock your door. You can use the mechanical key blade in your intelligent access key to open the driver door in this situation. See Remote Control (page 50).

## REMOTE CONTROL

### Intelligent Access Key

Note: You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the remote control is inside your vehicle.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Keys and Remote Controls

E307003

The remote control operates the power locks and the remote start system. The key must be in your vehicle to use the push button start.

### Removable Key Blade

The remote control also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.

E307694

Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

E151795

Note: Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.

### Using the Key Blade

The key cylinder is under a cap on the driver door handle.

To remove the cap:

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Keys and Remote Controls

E151956

Insert the key blade into the slot on the bottom of the handle and apply upward pressure.

While maintaining upward pressure, move the cap rearward to release it.

Gently remove the key while doing so.

To install the cap:

E151957

Place the cap just forward of the key cylinder.

Applying pressure to the cap, move it forward until it is in place. You may hear a snap as it engages.

Make sure you have properly installed the cap by trying to move it rearward.

Replacing the Battery

WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion.

Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

Note: Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.

A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is low. See Information Messages (page 100).

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Keys and Remote Controls

E307694

Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

E303824

Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Keys and Remote Controls

E218402

Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.

Install a new battery with the + facing upward.

Reinstall the battery cover and the key blade.

#### Car Finder

##### E138623

Press the button twice within three seconds. The horn sounds and the direction indicators flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

#### Sounding the Panic Alarm

Note: The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.

##### E138624

Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to turn it off.

#### Remote Start (If Equipped)

**WARNING:** To avoid exhaust fumes, do not use remote start if your vehicle is parked indoors or in areas that are not well ventilated.

Note: Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.

##### E138625

The remote start button is on the transmitter.

This feature allows you to start your vehicle from the outside. The transmitter has an extended operating range.

If your vehicle has automatic climate control, you can configure it to operate when you remote start your vehicle. See Climate Control (page 111). A manual climate control system will run at the setting it was set to when you switched your vehicle off.

Many states and provinces have restrictions for the use of remote start.

Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding remote start systems.

The remote start system does not work when any of the following conditions occur: The ignition is on. The anti-theft alarm triggers. You switch the feature off in the information display. The hood is open. The transmission is not in park (P). The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.

#### Remote Control Feedback

An LED on the remote control provides status feedback of remote start or stop commands.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Keys and Remote Controls

### Status LED

Remote start successful Solid green

Remote stop successful Solid red

Request failed or status not received Blinking red

Status incomplete Blinking green

### Remote Starting your Vehicle

Note: You must press each button within three seconds of each other. Your vehicle will not remote start if you do not follow this sequence.

#### E138626

To remote start your vehicle:

Press the lock button to lock all the doors.

Press the remote start button twice.

The exterior lamps flash twice.

The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

Note: You must press the push button ignition switch on the instrument panel once while applying the brake pedal before driving your vehicle.

The power windows do not work during remote start and the radio does not turn on automatically.

The parking lamps remain on and your vehicle will run for 5, 10 or 15 minutes, depending on the setting.

### Extending the Engine Running Time

To extend the engine running time duration of your vehicle during remote start, repeat steps 1 and 2 while the engine is running.

If the duration is set to 15 minutes, the duration extends by another 15 minutes.

For example, if your vehicle had been running from the first remote start for 10 minutes, your vehicle continues to run now for a total of 30 minutes. You can extend the engine running time duration to a maximum of 30 minutes.

Wait at least five seconds before remote starting after the engine stops running.

### Turning Your Vehicle Off After Remote Starting

#### E138625

Press the button once. Your vehicle and the parking lamps turn off.

You may have to be closer to your vehicle than when starting due to ground reflection and the added noise of your running vehicle.

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display.

#### Memory Feature

You can program your intelligent access key to recall memory positions. See Memory Function (page 121).

## REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer.

Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Keys and Remote Controls

#### PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys programmed to the vehicle can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that have not been programmed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. These can be used to:

Create a MyKey. Program configurable MyKey settings. Clear all MyKey features.

When you have programmed a MyKey, you can access the following information using the information display:

How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle. The total distance your vehicle has traveled using a MyKey.

Note: All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.

Note: For vehicles with intelligent access with push-button start, when both a MyKey and an admin intelligent access key fob are present, the admin fob will be recognized by the vehicle while switching the ignition on to start the vehicle.

#### Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an admin key user:

Seatbelt reminder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the front seat occupants' safety belts are not fastened. Early low fuel. The low-fuel warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel.

Driver assist features, if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: rear parking aid, blind spot information system (BLIS) with cross traffic alert, lane departure warning and forward collision warning system. Track Mode, if your vehicle is equipped with this feature, is restricted. Drag Strip, if your vehicle is equipped with this feature, is restricted. MyMode, if your vehicle is equipped with this feature, is restricted. Satellite radio adult content restrictions (available only in some markets).

Note: You may be able to temporarily disable the lane departure warning feature.

This feature is automatically enabled with every new key cycle.

### Configurable Settings

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the vehicle. You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key.

A vehicle speed limit can be set.

Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting cruise control.

**WARNING:** Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### MyKey

Various vehicle speed minders can be set. Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display, followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded. Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed-sensitive or compensated automatic volume control will be disabled. Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to turn off traction control, Emergency Assistance and Do Not Disturb (if your vehicle is equipped with these features), and Sport Mode will not be available to MyKey drivers.

### CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display to create a MyKey:

Insert the key you want to program into the ignition. If your vehicle is equipped with a push-button start, place the remote control into the backup slot.

See Starting a Gasoline Engine (page 132).

Switch the ignition on.

Access the main menu in the information display and then scroll through the menus to change the settings of your MyKey. From the MyKey menu select the option Create MyKey. See Information Displays (page 90).

When prompted, hold the OK button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The programmed restrictions apply when you key off, open and close the driver door and restart your vehicle with the programmed key or transmitter.

MyKey is successfully created. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). See Programming and Changing Configurable Settings.

### Programming and Changing Configurable Settings

Use the information display to access your configurable MyKey settings.

Switch the ignition on using an admin key or transmitter you want to program.

Access the main menu in the information display and then scroll through the menus to change the settings of your MyKey. See Information Displays (page 90).

Follow the instructions in the display.

The programmed restrictions apply when you switch the vehicle off, open and close the driver door and restart your vehicle with the programmed key or transmitter.

Note: You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you have switched the vehicle off, however, you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings. When you make any changes to your MyKey settings, you change the settings for every MyKey. You cannot make individual changes to apply to certain MyKeys.

## CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status at once. To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, use the information display.

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### MyKey

Access the main menu in the information display and then scroll through the menus to begin clearing your MyKey programming. See Information Displays (page 90).

Follow the instructions in the display.



A confirmation message appears in the display after you finish clearing your MyKeys.

Note: When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status. You cannot remove the MyKey restrictions individually.

## CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about your programmed MyKeys by using the information display. See Information Displays (page 90).

### MyKey Distance

Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear all MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.

### Number of MyKeys

Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when all MyKeys have been deleted.

### Number of Admin Keys

Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many admin keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

## USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non Ford-approved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

## MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### Potential Causes Condition

I cannot create a MyKey. The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle does not have admin privileges. The key or transmitter used to start the vehicle is the only admin key (there always has to be at least one admin key).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### MyKey

### Potential Causes Condition

Vehicles with keyless start: The keyless start transmitter is not placed in the backup position. See Passive Anti-Theft System (page 66). SecuriLock passive anti-theft system is disabled or in unlimited mode.

The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. No MyKeys are created. See [Creating a MyKey \(page 57\)](#).

I cannot program the configurable settings.

The key or transmitter used to start your vehicle does not have admin privileges. No MyKeys are created. See [Creating a MyKey \(page 57\)](#).

I cannot clear the MyKeys.

Purchase a new key from an authorized dealer.

I lost the only admin key.

Program a spare key. See [Passive Anti-Theft System \(page 66\)](#).

I lost a key.

MyKey distances do not accumulate. The MyKey user is not using the MyKey. An admin key holder cleared the MyKeys and created new MyKeys. The key system has been reset.

An admin transmitter is present at vehicle start. No MyKeys are created. See [Creating a MyKey \(page 57\)](#).

No MyKey functions with the keyless entry transmitter.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

MyKey

## **LOCKING AND UNLOCKING**

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.

E138628

Unlock.

Lock.

Door Lock Indicator

An LED on each door window trim illuminates when you lock the door. It remains on for up to 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Door Lock Switch Inhibitor

When you electronically lock your vehicle, the power door lock switch no longer operates after 20 seconds. You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on, to restore

function to these switches. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See General Information (page 90).

## Remote Control

You can use the remote control at any time. The luggage compartment release button only works when your vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

## Unlocking the Doors

### E138629

Press the button to unlock the driver door. Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The direction indicators flash.

Note: You can unlock the driver door with the key blade if the remote control is not functioning. See Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control (page 55).

Note: When you leave your vehicle unattended for several weeks, remote unlocking turns off. Unlock your vehicle using the key blade, then start your vehicle to restore the remote unlocking function.

See Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade later in this section.

## Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can reprogram the unlocking function so that all doors unlock.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for three seconds to change between driver door or all doors unlock mode. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change. Driver door mode only unlocks the driver door when you press the unlock button once. All door mode unlocks all doors when you press the unlock button once. The unlocking mode applies to the remote control and intelligent access. You can also change between the unlocking modes using the information display. See General Information (page 90).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Doors and Locks

### Locking the Doors

#### E138623

Press the button to lock all doors. The direction indicators flash. Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors lock again, the horn sounds and the direction indicators flash if all the doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

### Mislock

If any door or the luggage compartment is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the horn will sound twice and the direction indicators do not flash. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See General Information (page 90).

#### Auto Relock (If Equipped)

If you press the unlock button on the remote control and do not open a door within 45 seconds, your vehicle locks and the alarm arms.

#### Opening the Luggage Compartment

E138630

Press twice within three seconds to open the luggage compartment.

Make sure to close and latch the luggage compartment before driving your vehicle.

Objects may fall from an unlatched luggage compartment. An unlatched luggage compartment may block your rear view.

#### Activating Intelligent Access

##### General Information

You can unlock and lock the vehicle without taking the keys out of your pocket or purse when your intelligent access key is within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle.

Intelligent access uses a sensor on the back of the door handle for unlocking and a separate sensor on the face of each door handle for locking.

The system does not function if: Your vehicle battery has no charge. The key battery has no charge. The key frequencies are jammed.

Note: The system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

Note: If the system does not function, use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle. See Remote Control (page 50).

#### Unlocking Using Intelligent Access

E248553

With your intelligent access key within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle, touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle for a brief period and then pull on the door handle to unlock, being careful to not touch the lock sensor at the same time or pulling the door handle too quickly. The intelligent access system requires a brief delay to authenticate your intelligent access key fob.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Doors and Locks

##### Locking Using Intelligent Access

E248554

With your intelligent access key within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle, touch the outer door handle lock sensor for approximately one second to lock, being careful to not touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle at the same time. After locking, you can immediately pull on the door handle to confirm locking occurred without inadvertently unlocking.

#### Opening the Luggage Compartment

E175208

Press the exterior release button hidden above the license plate.

#### Smart Unlocks

This feature helps to prevent you from unintentionally locking your intelligent access key inside your vehicle's passenger compartment or luggage compartment.

When you electronically lock your vehicle (with any door open, vehicle in park and ignition off), your vehicle searches for an intelligent access key in the passenger compartment after you close the last door.

If your vehicle finds a key, all of the doors immediately unlock and the horn sounds twice, indicating that a key is inside.

Pressing the lock button on another intelligent access key. Touching the locking area on the handle with another intelligent access key in your hand.

When you open one of the front doors and lock your vehicle using the power door lock control, all doors lock then unlock if: The ignition is on. The ignition is off and the transmission is not in park (P).

#### Autolock (If Equipped)

Autolock locks all the doors when: All doors are closed. The ignition is on. You shift into any gear putting your vehicle in motion. Your vehicle reaches a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

Autolock repeats when: You open then close any door while the ignition is on and your vehicle speed is 9 mph (15 km/h) or lower. Your vehicle reaches a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Doors and Locks

##### Autounlock

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when: The ignition is on, you have closed all the doors, and your vehicle has been moving at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h). Your vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to the accessory position. You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to accessory.

Note: The doors do not autounlock if you electronically lock your vehicle after you switch the ignition off and before you open the driver door.

#### Enabling or Disabling Autounlock

You can enable or disable the autounlock feature in the information display or an authorized dealer can do it for you. See General Information (page 90).

#### Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle once to lock all doors.

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle once to unlock the driver door only. See Remote Control (page 50).

#### Locking the Doors Individually

E180643

If the central locking function does not operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.

##### Left-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock.

##### Right-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

#### Unlocking the Doors

If the central locking function does not operate, unlock the driver door and then unlock all other doors individually by pulling the interior door handles.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Doors and Locks

Note: If you have unlocked the doors using this method, you must lock the doors individually to restore the central locking function.

#### Unlocking the Luggage Compartment (Convertible Only)

E188353

If the power decklid release does not operate because of a discharged battery, pull the rear seat left-hand side seatback cushion aside, insert the mechanical key blade into the key slot and turn the key to release the decklid latch.

#### Opening the Luggage Compartment

##### From Inside Your Vehicle

E188015

Press the button on the instrument panel to open the luggage compartment.

From Outside Your Vehicle

E175208

Press the exterior release button hidden above the license plate. You need to have your vehicle unlocked or have an intelligent access key within 3 ft (1 m) of the luggage compartment.

With the Remote Control

E138630

Press twice within three seconds to open the luggage compartment.

Illuminated Entry

The interior lamps and select exterior lamps illuminate when you unlock the doors with the remote entry system.

The illuminated entry system turns off the lights if: The ignition is on. You press the remote control lock button. After 25 seconds of illumination.

The lights do not turn off if:

You switch them on with the lamp control. Any door is open.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Doors and Locks

Illuminated Exit

The interior lamps and select exterior lamps illuminate when all doors are closed and you switch the ignition off.

The lamps turn off if all the doors remain closed and: 25 seconds elapse. You press the START/STOP button.

Battery Saver

If you leave on the courtesy lamps, dome lamps or headlamps, the battery saver turns them off 10 minutes after you switch off the ignition.

Accessory Mode Battery Saver for Intelligent Access Keys

If you leave your vehicle in the run ignition state, it turns off once it detects a certain amount of battery drain or after 45 minutes.

## **INTERIOR LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT RELEASE**

**WARNING:** Keep vehicle doors and luggage compartment locked and keep keys and remote transmitters out of a child's reach. Unsupervised children could lock themselves in the trunk and risk injury. Children should be taught not to play in vehicles.

**WARNING:** Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. On hot days, the temperature in the trunk or vehicle interior can rise very quickly.

Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat-related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

Your vehicle is equipped with a release handle that provides a means of escape for children and adults if they become locked inside the luggage compartment.

Adults should familiarize themselves with the operation and location of the release handle.

E144403

The handle is located inside the luggage compartment either on the luggage compartment door (lid) or near the tail lamps. It is composed of a material that will glow for hours in darkness following brief exposure to ambient light.

Pull the handle and push up on the luggage compartment door (lid) to open from within the luggage compartment.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Doors and Locks

## **PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM**

**Note:** The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.

Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.

**Note:** Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting problems if they are too close to the key when starting your vehicle. Prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting your vehicle. Switch the ignition off, move all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart your vehicle if a problem occurs.

**Note:** Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.

SecuriLock

The system helps prevent your vehicle from starting unless you use a coded key programmed to your vehicle. Using the wrong key may prevent your vehicle from starting. A message may appear in the information display.

If you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key, it is not operating properly. A message may appear in the information display.

#### Automatic Arming

Your vehicle arms immediately after switching the ignition off.

#### Automatic Disarming

Switching the ignition on with a coded key disarms your vehicle.

#### Replacement Keys

Note: Your vehicle comes equipped with two intelligent access keys.

The intelligent access key functions as a programmed key that operates the driver door lock and activates the intelligent access with push button start system, as well as a remote control.

If your programmed transmitters are lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded key, you need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. You need to erase the key codes from your vehicle and program new coded keys.

Store an extra programmed key away from your vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. See your authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

#### Programming a Spare Intelligent Access Key

Note: You can program a maximum of four intelligent access keys to your vehicle.

You must have two previously programmed intelligent access keys inside your vehicle and the new unprogrammed intelligent access keys readily accessible.

See an authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed keys are not available.

Make sure that your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure. Make sure that you close all the doors before beginning and that they remain closed throughout the procedure. Perform all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. Stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again if you perform any steps out of sequence.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Security

E174956

Remove the rubber covering (A) from the cupholder. Place the first programmed key in the backup slot (B) at the bottom of the cupholder. Then press the push button ignition switch.

Wait five seconds and then press the push button ignition switch again.

Remove the intelligent access key.

Within 10 seconds, place a second programmed intelligent access key in the backup slot. Press the push button ignition switch.

Wait five seconds and then press the push button ignition switch again.

Remove the intelligent access key.

Place the unprogrammed intelligent access key in the backup slot and press the push button ignition switch.

Programming is now complete. Verify the remote control functions operate and your vehicle starts with the new intelligent access key.

If programming was not successful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 7.

If you are still unsuccessful, take your vehicle to your authorized dealer.

## **ANTI-THEFT ALARM**

The system will warn you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle. It will be triggered if any door, the luggage compartment or the hood is opened without using the key, remote control or keyless entry keypad.

The direction indicators will flash and the horn will sound if unauthorized entry is attempted while the alarm is armed.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

### **Arming the Alarm**

The alarm is ready to arm when there is not a key in your vehicle. Electronically lock your vehicle to arm the alarm.

### **Disarming the Alarm**

Disarm the alarm by any of the following actions:

Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control or keyless entry keypad. Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle. Use a key in the driver door to unlock your vehicle, then switch your vehicle on within 12 seconds.

Note: Pressing the panic button on the remote control will stop the horn and signal indicators, but will not disarm the system.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Security

## **ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL**

WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you sit in the correct position. See *Sitting in the Correct Position* (page 118).

E176634

Unlock the steering column.

Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.

E176635

Lock the steering column.

## **AUDIO CONTROL**

E286906

You can operate the following functions with the control:

E265304

Press - to decrease volume level.

Press + to increase volume level.

E268549

Press to silence the current media

E265045

Press to access the previous media selection.

E265044

Press to access the next media selection.

## **VOICE CONTROL**

The controls are on the steering wheel.

E142599

Press and release to activate voice recognition.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Steering Wheel

CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: CRUISE CONTROL

E174594

See What Is Cruise Control (page 167).

#### CRUISE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

E177068

See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 168).

#### INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC

E174595

See Information Displays (page 90).

#### INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

E248474

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Steering Wheel

Quick Action Menus

E248531

See Information Displays (page 90).

#### HEATED STEERING WHEEL (IF EQUIPPED)

Switch the heated steering wheel on and off using the touchscreen.

Touch the button to switch the heated steering wheel on and off.

Note: You can use the heated steering wheel only when the engine is running.

Note: The system uses a sensor and is designed to control the temperature of the steering wheel and to prevent it from overheating.

Note: In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.

HORN

E270945

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Steering Wheel

## **WINDSHIELD WIPERS**

Note: Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Note: Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Note: If streaks or smears appear on the windshield. clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue. install new wiper blades.

Note: Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass. damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

E173728

Single wipe.

Intermittent wipe.

Normal wipe.

High speed wipe.

Intermittent Wipe

E173729

Shortest wipe interval.

Intermittent wipe.

Longest wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

Speed Dependent Wipers

When your vehicle speed increases. the interval between wipes decreases.

## **AUTOWIPERS (IF EQUIPPED)**

Note: Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Note: Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Note: If streaks or smears appear on the windshield. clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue. install new wiper blades.

Note: If you switch autolamps and autowipers on. the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.

Wet or winter driving conditions with ice. snow or salty road mist can cause inconsistent and unexpected wiping or smearing.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Wipers and Washers

The feature uses a rain sensor that is in the area around the interior mirror. The rain sensor monitors the amount of moisture on the windshield and turns on the wipers.

It adjusts the wiper speed by the amount of moisture that the sensor detects on the windshield. You can switch this feature on and off in the information display. See Information Displays (page 90).

E173730

Highest sensitivity.

Lowest sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean.

The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

In these conditions, you can do the following: Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing on the windshield. Switch to normal or high-speed wipe. Switch autowipers off.

## WINDSHIELD WASHERS

Note: Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.

E173731

To operate the washers and spray the windshield, pull the lever toward you.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

## Wipers and Washers

### GENERAL INFORMATION

#### Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are: The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets). A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are: A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## **LIGHTING CONTROL**

E142449

Lamps off.

Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.

Headlamps.

Headlamp High Beam

E162679

Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Lighting

Flashing the Headlamp High Beam

E162680

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

**AUTOLAMPS**

**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the wipers operate.

Switch the lighting control to the autolamps position.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on.

Note: If you switch the autolamps on, you cannot switch the high beams on until the system turns the low beams on.

#### Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

When you switch the autolamps on, the headlamps turn on within 10 seconds of switching the wipers on. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps do not turn on with the wipers: During a single wipe. When using the windshield washers. If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

Note: If you switch the autolamps and the autowipers on, the headlamps turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.

## INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.

E291299

E291298

Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.

#### HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Lighting

## DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

**WARNING:** The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Type One - Conventional (Non Configurable)

The daytime running lamps turn on when:

Switching the ignition on.

The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions. or releasing the parking brake for vehicles with manual transmissions.

The lighting control is in the off, parking lamp or autolamps positions.

The headlamps are off.

Type Two - Configurable

Switch the daytime running lamps on or off using the information display. See Information Displays (page 90).

The daytime running lamps turn on when:

The lamps are on in the information display.

Switching the ignition on.

The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions. or releasing the parking brake for vehicles with manual transmissions.

The lighting control is in the autolamps position.

The headlamps are off.

The other lighting control switch positions do not turn on the daytime running lamps.

If the daytime running lamps are off in the information display, the lamps stay off in all switch positions.

## **FRONT FOG LAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)**

Switching the Front Fog Lamps On or Off

Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

You can switch the front fog lamps on if any of the following occur: You set the lighting control to the parking lamps position. You set the lighting control to the headlamps position. You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

The front fog lamp button is on the lighting control.

Press the button to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

Note: The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator

It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Lighting

## **DIRECTION INDICATORS**

E162681

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

### **WELCOME LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)**

The projection lights are on the bottom of the exterior mirror housings. They project an image onto the ground a short distance from your vehicle when welcome lighting or lighted entry turns on.

Note: Moisture, frost and ice build-up or other types of contamination on the surface of the light lens can cause non-permanent distortion or reduced brightness of the image. Do not use abrasive materials to clean the lens.

Note: For vehicles with manual transmission, you may need to engage the parking brake for this feature to operate.

## **INTERIOR LAMPS**

The lamps turn on under the following conditions: You open any door. You press a remote control button. You press a map lamp button.

Map Lamps

E175199

Left-hand side map lamp.

Right-hand side map lamp.

Press the button to switch the lamps on or off.

## **AMBIENT LIGHTING (IF EQUIPPED)**

Adjust the ambient lighting in the information display. See General Information (page 90).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Lighting

## **WHAT IS AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL**

The system turns on high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off. Low beams remain on.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

#### SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

Switch the system on or off using the information display. See General Information (page 90).

#### Activating the Automatic High Beam Control

Switch the lighting control to the autolamps position to activate.

See Autolamps (page 74).

Note: Automatic high beams are not available when autolamps are not turned on.

When active, the high beams turn on if: The ambient light level is low enough. There is no traffic in front of your vehicle. The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 32 mph (52 km/h).

When active, the high beams turn off if: The ambient light level is high enough that high beams are not required. The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps. The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.

The camera is blocked. The vehicle speed falls below approximately 27 mph (44 km/h).

Note: The deactivation speed is lower on curves.

Note: High beam reactivation may be delayed in certain curvy road situations.

Note: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction or damage.

Note: The system may not operate properly in cold or inclement conditions. You can switch on the high beams by overriding the system.

Note: If the system detects a blockage, for example bird droppings, bug splatter, snow or ice, the system goes into low beam mode until you clear the blockage. A message may appear in the information display if the camera is blocked.

Note: Using much larger tires or equipping vehicle accessories such as snowplows can modify your vehicle's ride height and degrade automatic high beam control performance.

## **AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS**

The indicator illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

#### OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Automatic High Beam Control (If Equipped)

WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

WARNING: You may need to override the system during inclement weather.

E162679

Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Automatic High Beam Control (If Equipped)

## **POWER WINDOWS**

WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows.

Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

E180087

Note: You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.

Note: Use the singular control (if equipped) to open both rear windows.

Press the control to open the window.

Lift the control to close the window.

One-Touch Down

Press the switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Up

Lift the switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Bounce-Back

The window will automatically stop and reverse some distance if it detects an obstacle while closing.

Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING: When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Pull up the window switch and hold within two seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window will travel up with no bounce-back protection.

The window will stop if you release the switch before the window is fully closed.

#### Accessory Delay

The window switches remain operational for several minutes when you switch the ignition off or until you open either front door.

## GLOBAL OPENING

You can use the remote control to open the windows with the ignition off.

Note: You can enable or disable this feature in the information display, or see an authorized dealer. See General Information (page 90).

Note: To operate this feature, accessory delay must not be active.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Windows and Mirrors

#### Opening the Windows

You can open the windows for a short time after you unlock your vehicle with the remote control. After you unlock your vehicle, press and hold the remote control unlock button to open the windows.

Release the button once movement starts.

Press the lock or unlock button to stop movement.

### EXTERIOR MIRRORS

#### Power Exterior Mirrors

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

E176804

Left-hand mirror

Adjustment control

Right-hand mirror

To adjust a mirror:

Select the mirror you want to adjust.

The control will illuminate.

Adjust the position of the mirror.

Press the mirror switch again.

#### Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

#### Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See Heated Rear Window (page 116).

#### Memory Mirrors (If Equipped)

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function.

See Power Seats (page 121).

#### Signal Indicator Mirrors (If Equipped)

The outer portion of the appropriate mirror housing will blink when you switch on the turn signal.

#### Projection Lights (If Equipped)

The lights are on the bottom of the mirror housings. See Welcome Lighting (page 76).

#### Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors (If

Equipped)

**WARNING:** Objects in the mirror are closer than they appear.

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the exterior mirrors. They can increase your visibility along the side of your vehicle.

Check the main mirror first before a lane change. then check the blind spot mirror.

If the blind spot mirror does not show any vehicles in its viewing area and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance. signal that you intend to change lanes.

Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear and carefully change lanes.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Windows and Mirrors

E138665

The image of the approaching vehicle is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). The image will transition from the main mirror and begin to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle will transition to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)

See Blind Spot Information System (page 179).

## INTERIOR MIRROR

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle. serious personal injury or death.

Note: Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

### Auto-Dimming Mirror

Note: Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

## SUN VISORS

E138666

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Windows and Mirrors

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

### Illuminated Vanity Mirror

E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

### Windows and Mirrors

## GAUGES

### Type 1

E230872

Tachometer.

Information Display.

Speedometer.

Fuel Gauge.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Instrument Cluster

Type 2

E270688

Tachometer.

Information Display.

Speedometer.

Fuel Gauge.

Information Bar

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.

Information Display

Odometer

Located in the bottom of the information display. Registers the accumulated distance your vehicle has traveled.

Trip Computer

See General Information (page 90).

Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See General Information (page 90).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Instrument Cluster

Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Note: The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a slope.

Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 75 mi (120 km) to empty for MyKey, and at 50 mi (80 km), 25 mi (40 km), 10 mi (20 km) and 0 mi (0 km) for all vehicle keys.

Note: The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.

#### Information Bar

Displays information such as compass direction, outside air temperature, odometer and transmission gear selector.

#### Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the level indicator will be in the normal range. If the engine coolant temperature exceeds the normal range, stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

#### Gauge Package (If Equipped)

E196366

#### Oil Pressure Gauge

Indicates the engine oil pressure.

#### Vacuum or Vacuum and Boost Gauge

Indicates the vacuum or vacuum and boost pressure in the intake.

## **WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS**

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA. Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

#### Instrument Cluster

#### Adaptive Cruise Control Indicator

(If Equipped)

E144524

It illuminates when you switch the system on.

It illuminates white when the system is in standby mode. It illuminates green when you set the adaptive cruise speed.

See Using Adaptive Cruise Control (page 168).

Airbag Warning Lamp

E67017

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Automatic Headlamp High Beam Indicator (If Equipped)

It illuminates when the system automatically turns the headlamp high beam on.

Battery

If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

Blind Spot Information System Indicator (If Equipped)

E151262

It illuminates when you switch the system off.

See Blind Spot Information System (page 179).

Brake System Warning Lamp

**WARNING:** Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous.

A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Note: Indicators vary depending on region.

This lamp is a dual function lamp and will illuminate when:

You apply the parking brake with the ignition on. Your vehicle has a brake fault or low brake fluid level, regardless of parking brake position.

E270480

If the lamp illuminates when you are moving, you may have the parking brake applied. Make sure the parking brake is off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible if the lamp continues to illuminate.

Cruise Control Indicator

E71340

It illuminates when you switch the system on.

See *What Is Cruise Control* (page 167).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Instrument Cluster

Direction Indicator

It illuminates when the left or right direction indicator or the hazard warning flasher is turned on. Flashes during operation. An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb.

Door Ajar Warning Lamp

Displays when the ignition is on and any door is not completely closed.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, this indicates that the engine is overheating. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp

E71880

It illuminates and a chime sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator (If Equipped)

It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Heads Up Display (If Equipped)

E156133

A red beam of lights will illuminate on the windshield in certain instances when using adaptive cruise control or the collision warning system. It will also illuminate momentarily when you start your vehicle to make sure the display works.

Headlamp High Beam Indicator

It will illuminate when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

Hood Ajar

E159324

It illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

Lane Keeping System Lamp (If Equipped)

E144813

Illuminates when the system activates.

Launch Control

E234583

Illuminates when this feature is ready, including both slip control and engine RPM hold.

E255688

Illuminates when only engine RPM hold is active. See Track Use (page 252).

Low Beam Malfunction

E181350

Lights when there is a malfunction with the low beam headlamp bulb.

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp

Illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Instrument Cluster

It also illuminates momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by your authorized dealer.

Low Washer Fluid Level Warning Lamp

E132353

Illuminates when the washer fluid is low.

Oil Pressure Warning Lamp

Illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

See Engine Oil Check (page 237).

#### Parking Lamps

Illuminate when you switch the parking lamps on.

#### Powertrain Fault

Illuminates when the system detects a powertrain fault.

Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

#### Service Engine Soon

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components.

Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

It illuminates when you switch the ignition on prior to engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether your vehicle is ready for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) testing.

Normally, it illuminates until the engine is cranked and automatically turns off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds it flashes eight times, this indicates that your vehicle is not ready for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) testing.

See Catalytic Converter (page 144).

#### Shift Indicator (If Equipped)

Illuminates to inform you that shifting to a higher gear as indicated may give better fuel economy and lower CO<sub>2</sub> emissions. It will not illuminate during periods of high acceleration, braking or when you press the clutch pedal.

#### Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator

E138639

Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: The system automatically turns off if there is a malfunction.

See Using Stability Control (page 159).

See Using Traction Control (page 157).

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Instrument Cluster

Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp

E130458

Illuminates when you switch the system off.

Trunk Ajar

E159323

Illuminates when the ignition is on and the trunk is not completely closed.

## **AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS**

Keyless Warning Alert

The horn sounds twice when you exit your vehicle with the intelligent access key and your vehicle is in ON, indicating your vehicle is still on. The horn also sounds twice when you exit your vehicle and attempt to lock the doors manually when the intelligent access key is still in the vehicle. The doors will not lock if the intelligent access key remains in the vehicle.

Headlamps On Warning Tone

Sounds when you remove the key from the vehicle and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Parking Brake On Warning Tone

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning tone remains on after you release the parking brake, have the system checked by your authorized dealer immediately.

Transmission Not in Park

Sounds when the gear selector is in any position other than park (P), and you switch the vehicle ignition off or to the accessory position. If the door is ajar, the tone is continuous. Once you close the door, the tone continues for a period of time.

Direction Indicator Left On

Sounds when the direction indicator does not disengage after 2.0 mi (3.2 km) of driving.

Beltminder Warning

Sounds when the system detects an unfastened seatbelt in an occupied seat and your vehicle is moving.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Instrument Cluster

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the information display controls on the steering wheel. The information display shows the corresponding information.

Note: Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

Information Display Controls

E249039

Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu. Press the right arrow button to enter a sub-menu. Press the left arrow button to exit a menu. Press and hold the left arrow button at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button). Press the OK button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Information Displays

Main Menu

Gauge Mode

Trip/Fuel

Track Apps

Driver Assist

Settings

E204495

This icon shows the features on or off status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

Note: Some items are optional and may not appear.

Gauge Mode

Gauge Mode

Distance to Empty

Speedometer km/h or Speedometer MPH

Tire Pressure

Air/Fuel Ratio Gauge Detail

Axle Oil Temp

Boost/Vacuum

Cylinder Head Temp

Inlet Air Temp

Oil Pressure

Oil Temp

Trans Oil Temp

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Information Displays

Gauge Mode

Vacuum

Voltage

Air/Fuel Ratio - Displays the current air to fuel mixture in the engine. Axle Oil Temp - Displays the axle's oil temperature. Boost/Vacuum - Displays the vacuum or boost pressure for the 2.3L engine. Cylinder Head Temp - Displays the engine's cylinder head temperature. Inlet Air Temp - Displays the temperature of the air in the cold air inlet tube. Oil Pressure - Displays the engine oil pressure. Oil Temp - Displays the engine oil temperature. If the temperature rises to the red area. stop in a safe place and let your vehicle cool. If the problem persists. see an authorized dealer. Trans Oil Temp - Displays the transmission fluid operating temperature. If the temperature rises to the red area. stop in a safe place and let the transmission cool.

If the problem persists. see an authorized dealer. Vacuum - Displays the vacuum pressure for the 5.0L engine. Voltage - Displays your vehicle's battery voltage. If the voltage is consistently too high or very low. contact an authorized dealer.

Note: In order to provide real-time values. some gauges may display more value fluctuation than other gauges during normal operation.

Trip/Fuel

Trip/Fuel

Trip 1 or Trip 2 - Trip timer. Trip distance. distance to E and avg mpg

Instant fuel economy Fuel Economy

AVG MPG

Last 30 minutes Fuel History

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.

Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Information Displays

Trip/Fuel

AVG MPG

Trip Timer - Registers the time of individual journeys. Trip Distance - Registers the distance of individual journeys. Distance to E - Shows the approximate distance your vehicle can travel before running out of fuel. Avg MPG - Shows the average fuel usage based on time. Instant fuel economy - Shows your instantaneous fuel usage. Fuel History - Shows fuel usage as a bar graph based on time. The graph is updated each minute with the fuel economy that you achieved during 30 minutes of driving.

Note: Press and hold OK to reset the currently displayed information.

Track Apps

WARNING: Track Apps is for track use only. Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It is always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage.

Track Apps provides a suite of options to record and optimize your track performances. See Track Use (page 252).

Track Apps

Status Screen

Virtual gauge shown Accelerometer

Select your speed. distance and start settings Acceleration Timer

Choose your applicable setting.

Brake Performance

Choose your applicable setting.

Exhaust Mode

Quiet Start

Line Lock

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Information Displays

Track Apps

Track (XXX) Lap Timer

Launch Control

Rev Match

Acceleration Timer View/Clear Results

Brake Performance

Lap Timer

All Time Best

Clear Saved Data

Clear All Time Best

Clear Accel.

Driver Assist

Driver Assist

AdvanceTrac

Auto Engine Off

Blindspot

Driver Alert

Sensitivity Pre-Collision Assist

Active Braking

Distance Indication

Cross Traffic Alert

Rear Park Aid

Choose your applicable setting.

Cruise Control

Hill Start Assist

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing



Information Displays

Driver Assist

Mode Lane Keeping Assist

Intensity

Hold OK to Reset Tire Monitor

Settings

Settings

Choose your applicable setting.

Alarm Vehicle

Easy Entry/Exit

Choose your applicable setting.

Lighting

Locks

Percent Oil Life XXX% Oil Life Reset Hold OK to Reset

Park Lock Control

Choose your applicable setting.

Remote Start

Tire Mobility Kit

Windows

Wipers

Choose your applicable setting.

Gauge Color MyColor

Halo

Ambient Light

Set MyColor

Displays the status of MyKeys.

Admin Keys and MyKey distance.

MyKey Status MyKey

Hold OK to Create MyKey Create MyKey

Choose your applicable setting.



911 Assist

AdvanceTrac

Do Not Disturb

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Information Displays

Settings

Max Speed

Speed Minder

Volume Limiter

Hold OK to Clear All MyKeys Clear MyKeys

Choose your applicable setting.

Distance Display Setup

Temperature

Tire Pressure

Language

1 See Track Use (page 252).

Note: Quiet Start allows you to schedule when the Exhaust Mode turns on the Quiet setting. The time window can be from 1 to 24 hours.

Information Display Controls Type 2

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the information display controls on the steering wheel. The information display shows the corresponding information.

Mustang (CZG) Canada/United States of America. Vehicles Built From: 15-07-2019. enUSA.  
Edition date: 201906. Second-Printing

Information Displays

**Warning**

This content is compiled from multiple sources and is provided for reference purposes only. It may not be complete or fully applicable to all situations. If you are unable to resolve your issue, please contact the product manufacturer or an authorized service provider for official support.



